ŠKODA

Vehicle handover documentation

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

Date of vehicle handover _____ / _____ / _____

"Škoda Partner"
Dealer's stamp and signature

I confirm that the car has been properly handed over to me and that I have been informed of the correct way to use it and of the warranty conditions.
Customer's signature

Does the vehicle have an extended warranty?

☐**YES**

☐**NO**

Limitation of Škoda extended warranty[a)]

Years: _____

or:

km: _____

or

miles: _____

[a)] Whichever comes first.

Prepaid service option

Applies to the Czech Republic

☐Standard	☐5 years, max. 60,000 km
☐Plus	☐5 years, max. 100,000 km
	☐5 years, max. 150,000 km

For information on you Škoda prepaid service, please contact your Škoda Partner or visit the following website:

https://go.skoda.eu/predplaceny-servis

Printing, reproduction, translation or other use of this work or any part thereof is not allowed without the written consent of Škoda Auto a.s..

All proprietary rights to this work arising from copyright regulations shall be exercised exclusively by Škoda Auto a.s..

Changes to this work are subject to change.

Issued by: Škoda Auto a.s., tř. Václava Klementa 869, Mladá Boleslav II, 293 01 Mladá Boleslav, Česká republika

© Škoda Auto a.s. 2024

Vehicle owners

1. vehicle owner

Official registration number:

_____

Owner (title, name / company):

_____

_____

Address:

_____

_____

_____

Phone:

_____

Škoda Partner

Service consultant:

_____

Telephone:

_____

2. vehicle owner

Official registration number:

_____

Owner (title, name / company):

_____

_____

Address:

_____

_____

_____

Phone:

_____

Škoda Partner

Service consultant:

_____

Telephone:

_____

Table of Contents

1 Vehicle owners

5 Explanations

6 About the Owner's Manual

7 About the Owner's Manual

8 Video tutorials

9 Instructions on the Infotainment system
9 Functionality

11 Vehicle overviews
11 Front and side vehicle area
13 Rear vehicle area
14 Driver's seat
14 Centre console and passenger seat
15 Engine compartment

16 Indicator lights
16 Functionality
16 Indicator lights overview

19 Correct and safe use
19 Introductory notes for correct use of the vehicle
19 New vehicle or new parts
19 Regular checks
19 Incorrect vehicle adjustments
20 Sensor and camera maintenance
20 Engine compartment
20 Handling fluids
21 12V vehicle battery
21 Using vehicle electrical sockets
21 Before your journey
21 Sitting safely
22 Correct belt webbing arrangement
22 Correct steering wheel position
22 Securing children properly
23 Transporting objects safely
23 Safe driving
24 Stop the vehicle safely
24 Exiting the vehicle
24 Different climatic conditions
24 Emergency calls
26 After an accident

27 Key, locks and alarm
27 Key
28 Central locking
31 Keyless locking
32 Alarm

34 Doors, windows and the boot lid
34 Doors
34 Child safety lock on the rear doors
34 Windows – with manual operation
35 Windows – with electrical operation
36 Sun visors
36 Boot lid – with manual operation
37 Releasing the boot lid

38 Seats, steering wheel and mirrors
38 Front seat – with manual operation
38 Rear seats
39 Rear seat belt parking position
39 Headrests
39 Rear armrest
39 Steering wheel
40 Interior mirror
40 Exterior mirrors

42 Restraint systems and airbags
42 Seat belts
43 Child seat
44 Fasteners for child seats
48 Airbags
49 Passenger front airbag switch

51 Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers
51 Exterior lighting
52 Daytime running lights
52 Automatic activation of lights
52 High beam and headlight flasher
53 Turn signal
53 Fog lights
53 Hazard warning lights function
53 Parking lights function
54 The Corner function
54 Headlights adaptive function
54 The Coming Home, Leaving Home functions
54 High beam Light Assist assistant
55 Replacing light bulbs
56 Interior lighting
57 Interior background lighting
57 Wipers and washers

60 Heating and air conditioning
60 Heating
60 Manual air conditioning
61 The Climatronic automatic air conditioning system
63 Windows heating

63 Seat heating
64 Steering wheel heating

65 Driver information system
65 Digital screen
66 Virtual cockpit
68 Driving data
69 Speed limit warning
70 Vehicle status

71 7" Infotainment system
71 The Infotainment system overview
71 System
72 Display
73 Infotainment keypad
74 Control centre
74 Radio
77 Media
79 Mobile devices management
80 Phone
82 Wi-Fi
83 SmartLink

86 8" Infotainment system
86 The Infotainment system overview
86 System
87 Display
88 Keypad
89 Control centre
89 Radio
91 Media
93 Mobile devices management
95 Phone
97 Wi-Fi
97 SmartLink

101 9" Infotainment system
101 The Infotainment system overview
101 System
102 Display
103 Keypad
104 Voice control
105 Control centre
106 Radio
109 Media
111 Mobile devices management
113 Phone
116 Wi-Fi
117 SmartLink
119 Navigation

124 Online services
124 Škoda Connect
125 MyŠkoda application
125 Škoda Connect services user registration and activation
125 Setting personal data protection
126 User management
128 User account
128 Personalisation
129 eSIM data connection
129 Online system update
130 Shop
130 Information calls
131 Breakdown call
131 Planning a service visit
131 Vehicle health card
131 Škoda Connect services

132 Starting and driving
132 Starting with the key
132 Starting with the push button
133 Starting issues
133 START-STOP
134 Manual gearbox
134 Automatic gearbox
136 Driving modes
136 Economical driving style
137 Driving with a trailer
137 Tow eye and towing
138 Brakes
139 Handbrake

140 Travel assist systems
140 Braking and stabilising systems
141 Front Assist
142 Pedestrian detection
142 Speed limiter
143 Cruise control system
144 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
147 Lane Assist – assistant for keeping your lane
148 Travel Assist
149 Side Assist – lane change system
150 Traffic sign recognition
151 Driver Alert fatigue detection

152 Parking assistance systems
152 Park Pilot parking aid
153 Rear view camera
154 Rear Traffic Alert
154 Park steering assistant

157 Engine, exhaust system and fuel
157 Bonnet
157 Engine oil
159 Coolant
160 Engine electronics
160 Particulate filter
160 Exhaust gas control system
160 Fuel filler flap
160 Petrol

163 12V vehicle battery and fuses
163 12V vehicle battery
164 Using jump start cables
165 Fuses
166 Fuses in the dash panel
167 Fuses in the engine compartment

168 Wheels
168 Tyres and rims
169 All-season or winter tyres
169 Snow chains
170 Spare wheel and temporary spare wheel
170 Replacing the wheel and lifting the vehicle
172 Tyre repair kit
173 Tyre pressure
174 Tyre pressure monitor
174 Wheel bolt cover caps
174 Full-width wheel cover

176 Storage space and interior equipment
176 Luggage compartment equipment
176 Emergency equipment
176 Storage compartment for the reflective vest
176 Tool kit
177 Fasteners in the boot
177 Bag hooks in the luggage compartment
177 Flexible storage compartment
178 Cargo elements in the luggage space
178 Hook on the attachment eye of the TOP TETHER system
178 Securing nets
178 Storage pocket
178 Double-sided carpet
178 Boot lid
179 Luggage compartment variable loading floor
180 Interior equipment front
180 Parking permit holder
181 Glasses holder
181 Pencil holder
181 Storage space for cards and coins
181 The space for a bottle is in the front door storage compartment
181 USB inputs
182 Interior equipment rear
183 The clothes hook on the middle door pillar
183 The space for a bottle in the rear door storage compartment
183 Phone pocket
183 Storage compartment behind the centre console
184 Storage compartment for umbrella
184 Phone box
185 Cup holder
185 Cup holder Easy Open
185 Waste container
185 Ashtray and lighter
186 Tablet holder
187 12V power socket

188 Roof rack and the towing bracket
188 Roof rack
188 Removable towing bracket

193 Maintenance and cleaning
193 Service events
193 Service work, adjustments and technical changes
194 Škoda Prepaid service
194 Interior
195 Exterior
197 Ice scraper

198 Technical data and specifications
198 Technical data regulations
198 Vehicle identification data
198 Stickers and labels
198 Axle weights and loads
199 Operating weight
200 Vehicle dimensions
200 Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)
200 Personal data
201 Information about the radio systems in the vehicle
205 Disposal of used batteries and electronic devices
205 Product recycling
206 Trademarks Information
206 Preparation for breathalyser
206 Rights arising from defective performance, Škoda warranties

209 Engine specifications
209 1.0 l/70 kW TSI engine
209 1.0 l/85 kW TSI engine
209 1.5 l/110 kW TSI engine
210 1.0 l/59 kW MPI engine
210 1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine

211 Index

Explanations

Specialist garage

"Specialist garage" is a workshop that carries out specialist service operations for Škoda vehicles. A specialist garage can be both a Škoda Authorised workshop or Škoda Partner, who is authorized to provide services as well as an independent workshop.

Škoda Service Partner

"Škoda Service Partner" is a garage that is contractually authorised by Škoda Auto or its sales partner to service Škoda vehicles and to sell Škoda Genuine Parts.

Škoda Partner

"A Partner of Škoda" is a company that has been contractually authorised by Škoda Auto or its sales partner to sell new Škoda vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using Škoda Genuine Parts and to sell Škoda Genuine Parts.

Text notes

"**Pressing**" – short press (e.g. of a button) for up to 1 second

"**Holding**" – long press (e.g. of a button) for more than 1 second

Direction indications

All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the vehicle's forward direction of travel.

Units

Values are given in metric units.

Where units of length are given in miles, these are English miles.

Symbols

⚠ DANGER

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in minor or moderate injury.

ⓘ NOTICE

Texts with this symbol indicate situations which, if the instructions are not observed, will result in damage to the vehicle.

ⓘ Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

About the Owner's Manual

⚠ WARNING

Respect the instructions for the child car seat: Never use a rear-facing child restraint in a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. This could result in death or serious injury to the child » *page 43*.

General points

This Owner's Manual applies to all vehicle **body variants**, including all **model variants** and all **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that not **all trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **Illustrations** in this Owner's Manual are generic and provided for information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual has been created for left-hand drive vehicles. In right-hand drive vehicles, the display of the controls in the figures may differ from reality.

Škoda Auto is constantly working on further development of all its vehicles. Changes can therefore be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. This Owner's Manual contains the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be based on the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Printed version of the Owner's Manual

With the environment in mind, the printed Owner's Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and maintenance, and only some technical parameters.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes complete information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available in the following places:

- In the Infotainment system of your vehicle » *page 9*
- On Škoda website.
- In MyŠkoda mobile application.

https://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Video tutorials

When the following link or QR code is loaded, a website with video tutorials for selected vehicle functions will be displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-fabia4

About the Owner's Manual

⚠ WARNING

Respect the instructions for the child car seat: Never use a rear-facing child restraint in a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. This could result in death or serious injury to the child » page 43.

General points

This Owner's Manual applies to all vehicle **body variants**, including all **model variants** and all **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that not **all trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **Illustrations** in this Owner's Manual are generic and provided for information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual has been created for left-hand drive vehicles. In right-hand drive vehicles, the display of the controls in the figures may differ from reality.

Škoda Auto is constantly working on further development of all its vehicles. Changes can therefore be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. This Owner's Manual contains the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be based on the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual

With the environment in mind, the printed Owner's Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and maintenance.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes complete information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available in the following places:

- In the Infotainment system of your vehicle » page 9
- On Škoda website.
- In MyŠkoda mobile application.

https://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Video tutorials

When the following link or QR code is loaded, a website with video tutorials for selected vehicle functions will be displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-fabia4

Video tutorials

The video instructions are for illustration only, the images may differ from your vehicle.

After reading in the following reference or the QR code, the website with the vehicle offer is displayed.

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-fabia4

Overview of video tutorials

An overview of the video tutorials appearing in this manual.

- Side Assist – activation and deactivation ***» page 150***
- Lane Assist – activation and deactivation ***» page 148***
- Light Assist – activation and deactivation ***» page 55***
- ACC – setting ***» page 147***
- Front Assist – activation and deactivation ***» page 142***
- KESSY – operation ***» page 32***
- Dynamic Road Sign Display – how it works ***» page 151***
- Emergency calls ***» page 26***
- Parking assistant – operation ***» page 156***
- Virtual cockpit – operation ***» page 68***
- Headlights – operation ***» page 52***

Instructions on the Infotainment system

Functionality

You can display the Owner's Manual in the Infotainment system under **MENU** > > .

If is not displayed, check for available system updates.

The initial menu contains tiles with the contents of the manual and a search field.

- How to search
- Interactive images
- Symbols
- Topics
- Find
- Tutorial videos
- Simply Clever
- About the instructions

Search

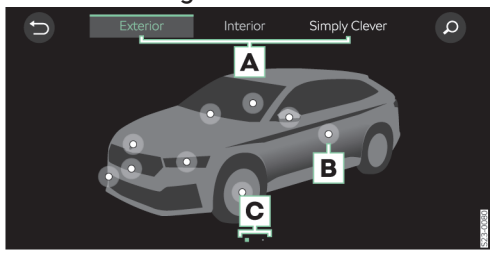
1. Tap .
2. Find the desired term and confirm it.

Or:

- Enter and confirm the desired expression in the search box with the magnifying glass symbol.

- To ensure a successful search, use specific language characters, e.g. å, æ, ø, ü, í, š.
- When entering a search term, use the words that the system offers according to the part of the search term you have already entered.
- If you download a manual in a language other than the factory set language, select the appropriate additional keyboard language for the search function. If no such language is available, select another language containing the necessary language characters.

Interactive images



A Switching between car interior/exterior and depending on vehicle equipment Simply Clever elements

B Displaying information or a detailed image

C Switching between images

Symbols

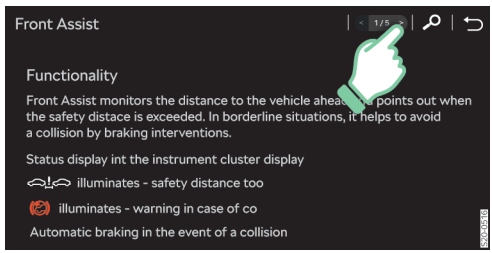
The menu contains an overview of all the indicator lights that can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

For each indicator light there is an explanation and a link to detailed information.

Topics – variant 1

The menu contains the complete contents of the manual arranged in chapters. Each chapter contains several topics.

After selecting a chapter and a topic, introductory information is displayed.

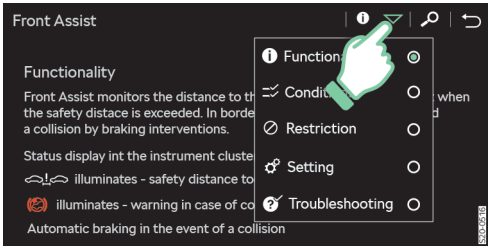


- To display more information, press > or <.

Topics – variant 2

The menu contains the complete contents of the manual arranged in chapters. Each chapter contains several topics.

After selecting a chapter and a topic, introductory information is displayed.



› To display more information, press ▼.

Tutorial videos

Depending on vehicle equipment.

› Link and QR–code to the website with all available video guides for your car

› Overview of the individual video guides

After selecting a video guide from the overview, a link and QR–code to the website with the corresponding video guide will be displayed.

Simply Clever

Depending on vehicle equipment.

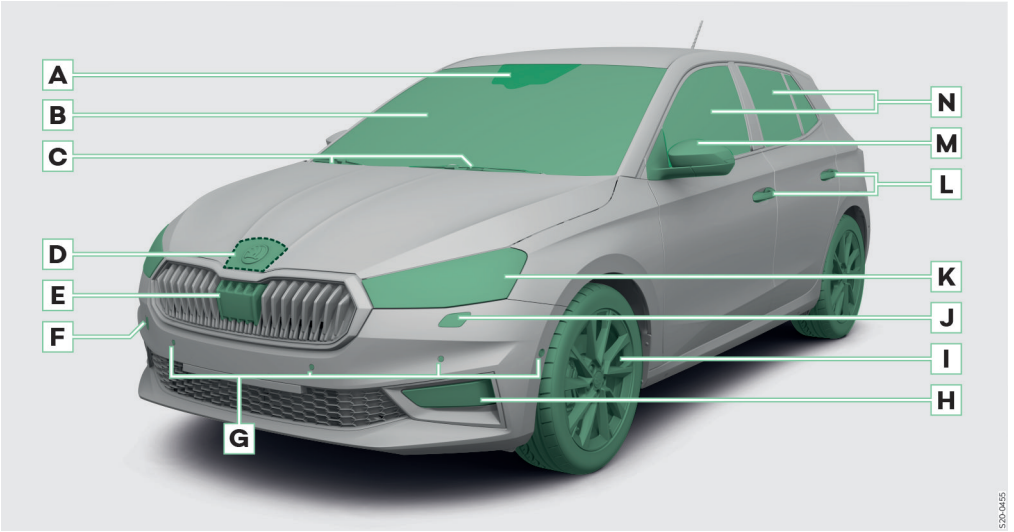
Overview of individual Simply Clever car equipment elements.

About the manual

The menu contains, for example, the choice of the language of the manual, updates and legal information.

Vehicle overviews

Front and side vehicle area



- **A** Under the windscreen (depending on the vehicle equipment):
  - › Assist systems camera
  - › Light sensor for automatic driving light circuit » page 52
  - › Rain sensor for automatic wiping » page 57
- **B** Windscreen – heating » page 63
- **C** Wipers – operation » page 57
- **D** Bonnet release lock (on the inside of the bonnet) » page 157
- **E** Frontal radar sensor for he assist systems
- **F** Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » page 138
- **G** Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems
- **H** Front fog lights:
  - › Operation » page 53
  - › Replacing light bulbs » page 55
- **I** Wheels:
  - › Tyres and rims » page 168
  - › Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle » page 170
  - › Tyre repair kit » page 172
  - › Tyre pressure » page 173
  - › Tyre pressure monitor » page 174
- **J** Headlamps washers » page 57

K Headlights (depending on vehicle equipment):
- › Operation » page 51
- › High beam Light Assist assistant » page 54

L Door handles (depending on vehicle equipment):
- › Opening the door » page 34
- › Keyless locking (KESSY) » page 31

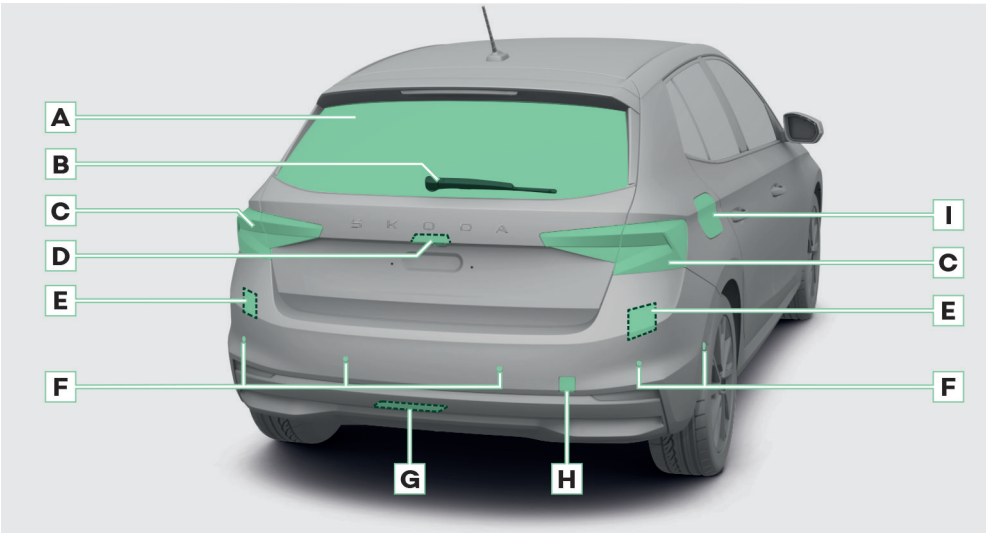
M Wing mirrors – operation » page 40

N Side door windows (depending on vehicle equipment):
- › Electric window control » page 35
- › Manual window control » page 34

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » page 20.

Rear vehicle area



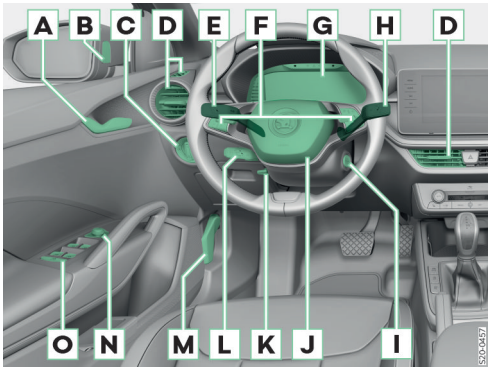
- **A** Rear window – heating » page 63
- **B** Rear window wiper and washer – operation » page 57
- **C** Tail lights:
  - › Operation » page 51
  - › Rear fog light – operation » page 53

    Rear fog light is only on the driver's side
  - › Replacing light bulbs » page 55
- **D** Boot lid handle (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - › Boot lid operation » page 36
  - › Assist systems camera
- **E** Radar sensors for assist systems (inside bumper)
- **F** Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems
- **G** Towing bracket » page 188
- **H** Towing eye » page 138
- **I** Fuel filler cap:
  - › Opening » page 160
  - › Sticker with specified fuel
  - › Ice scraper

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

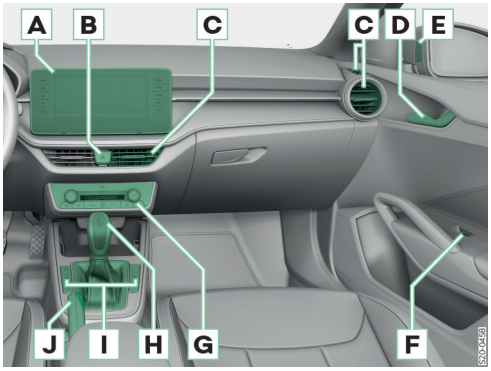
› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » page 20.

Driver's seat



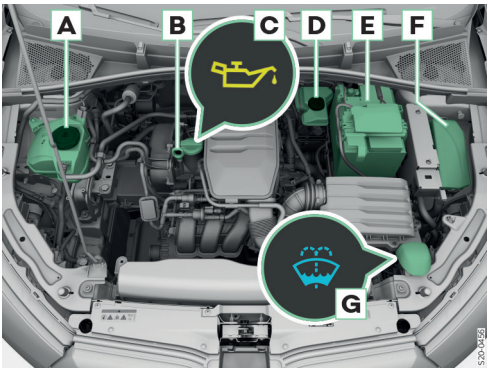
- **A** Door handle *» page 34*
- **B** Indicator light of lane change assistant *» page 149*
- **C** Light switch *» page 51*
- **D** Air outlet nozzle
- **E** Control lever (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - › Turn signal *» page 53*
  - › High beam *» page 52*
  - › Cruise control system *» page 144*
  - › Speed limiter *» page 142*
  - › High beam assistant *» page 55*
- **F** Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel *» page 39*
- **G** Instrument cluster (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - › Virtual cockpit *» page 66*
- **H** Control lever (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - › Wipers and washers *» page 57*
- **I** Depending on vehicle equipment:
  - › Ignition switch *» page 132*
  - › Starter button *» page 132*
- **J** Steering wheel with horn and driver's front airbag *» page 48*
- **K** Safety lever for steering wheel adjustment *» page 40*
- **L** Adaptive cruise control *» page 146*
- **M** Bonnet release lock *» page 157*
- **N** Wing mirror operation *» page 40*
- **O** Window operation *» page 35*

Centre console and passenger seat



- **A** Infotainment system (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - › 7" *» page 71*
  - › 8" *» page 86*
  - › 9" *» page 101*
- **B** Hazard warning lights function *» page 53*
- **C** Air outlet nozzle
- **D** Door handle *» page 34*
- **E** Indicator light of lane change assistant *» page 149*
- **F** Passenger window operation *» page 35*
- **G** Operation (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - › Manual air conditioning *» page 60*
  - › Climatronic *» page 62*
- **H** Depending on vehicle equipment:
  - › Gear lever (manual gearbox) *» page 134*
  - › Selector lever (automatic gearbox) *» page 134*
- **I** Buttons (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - › MODE Selecting driving mode *» page 136*
  - › Ⓐ START-STOP *» page 133*
  - › Central locking *» page 29*
  - › Park assist *» page 154*
  - › Parking aid *» page 152*
  - › Traction control ASR *» page 140*
- **J** Parking brake *» page 139*

Engine compartment



- A Coolant expansion reservoir » page 159
- B Engine oil dipstick » page 158
- C Engine oil filler opening » page 158
- D Brake fluid reservoir » page 139
- E 12V vehicle battery » page 163
- F Fuse box » page 167
- G Windscreen washer fluid reservoir » page 58

Indicator lights

Functionality

⚠ WARNING

Disregarding hazard warning lights and the associated messages on instrument cluster display can lead to accidents, serious injuries, damage to the vehicle or a loss of warranty.

Indicator or warning lights on the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

Illumination of some warning lights may be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages on the instrument cluster screen.

Additional indicator lights

The following additional indicator lights will also light up on the screen along with some of the indicator lights:

⚠ – hazard

⚠ –- warning

Indicator lights overview

After switching on the ignition, some indicator lights light up as a function test of the vehicle systems.
If the tested systems are functioning correctly, the respective indicator lights go out a few seconds after the ignition is switched on or after the engine has been started.

For further details, see *» page 16, Functionality*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Together with another indicator light it indicates a warning of serious danger *» page 16*.
	Unfastened front and rear seat belt *» page 42*.
	12V vehicle battery is not charging *» page 164*.
	Together with  – engine fault *» page 159*.
	Engine oil pressure too low *» page 158*.
	Engine oil level too low *» page 158*.
	Coolant level too low *» page 159*.
	Coolant temperature too high *» page 159*.
	Low brake fluid level *» page 139*.
	Together with – fault in brake system and ABS *» page 141*.
	Illuminated – parking brake engaged *» page 139*.
	illuminates – power assisted steering fault *» page 40*.
	flashes – steering column lock fault *» page 40*.
	Automatic gearbox impaired *» page 135*.
	Automatic gearbox overheated *» page 135*.
	Take over steering immediately *» page 148*.
	Warning if there is a risk of collision *» page 141*, *» page 142*.
	ACC is not braking sufficiently *» page 145*.
	Together with another indicator light, it indicates a warning *» page 16*.
	The petrol level has reached the reserve area. *» page 161*.
	Fault / Low battery charge of the 12V vehicle battery *» page 164*.
	Windscreen washer fluid too low *» page 58*.
	Light sensor and rain sensor fault *» page 52*, *» page 58*.
	Wipers fault *» page 58*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Light bulb fault » page 51.
	Rear fog light on » page 53.
	Engine oil level too high or engine oil level sensor impaired » page 158.
	Clogged particulate filter » page 160.
	ABS fault » page 141.
	Automatic gearbox overheated » page 135.
	Automatic gearbox impaired » page 135.
	Tyre pressure monitoring system fault » page 174.
	Tyre pressure change » page 169, » page 174.
	illuminates – power assisted steering fault » page 40.
	flashes – steering column lock not active » page 40.
	flashes – steering column lock fault » page 40.
	KESSY – starting issues » page 133.
	KESSY – no key found » page 32.
EPC	Fault in the engine control system » page 160.
	Emission control system fault » page 160.
ON	Passenger front airbag switched on » page 49.
OFF	Passenger front airbag switched off » page 49.
	Airbag system fault » page 49.
	Illuminates for 4 s and then flashes – airbag or belt tensioner deactivated by the diagnostic device » page 49.
	ASR deactivated » page 140.
	Illuminates – ESC or ASR malfunction » page 141.
	Flashes – ESC or ASR is engaged » page 140.

Symbol	Meaning
	Front Assist deactivated » page 141.
	Front Assist inaccessible » page 141.
	Unavailable ACC » page 146.
	Lane Assist system malfunction » page 150.
	Rear Traffic Alert malfunction » page 154.
	Malfunction of Fatigue detection » page 151.
	Travel Assist malfunction » page 149.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 147.
	Lane Assist is deactivated » page 147.
	Lane Assist system malfunction » page 148.
	Malfunction of Dynamic Road Sign Display » page 151.
	The left turn signal » page 53, » page 53.
	The right turn signal » page 53, » page 53.
	Fastened rear seat belt » page 42.
	Trailer turn signal » page 53.
	Front fog lights on » page 53.
	The selector lever is locked » page 134.
	Lane Assist is activated and prepared to intervene » page 147.
	ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed » page 145.
	Cruise control regulates the vehicle's speed » page 143.
	Illuminated – the speed limiter regulates the speed of the vehicle » page 142.
	The Travel Assist is activated. » page 148.
	Travel Assist activated – lane guidance is in progress » page 148.

Symbol	Meaning
	Travel Assist activated – cruise control is regulating the speed » page 148.
	Low outside temperature » page 66.
	High beam or headlight flasher is on » page 52.
	Light Assist activated – the high beam is on » page 55.
	Lane Assist is activated, but it is not prepared to intervene » page 147.
	Fastened rear seat belt » page 42.
	Unfastened rear seat belt » page 42.
	Low outside temperature » page 65.
	The lights are not switched on » page 51.
	Take over driving » page 148.
	Light Assist activated » page 55.
	Service events » page 193.
	Engine was shut down automatically by START-STOP » page 133.
	Engine was not shut down automatically by START-STOP » page 134.
	Speed limiter faulty » page 143.
	Illuminated – speed limiter activated » page 142.
	The ACC is activated. » page 145.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the approaching roundabout » page 146.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the road » page 146.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the approaching junction » page 146.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the permissible speed » page 146.

Symbol	Meaning
	Cruise control system faulty » page 144.
	Cruise control active » page 143.
	Cruise control deactivated » page 143.
	Front Assist is being activated » page 141.
	Safe distance not kept » page 141.
	Break recommendation » page 151.
	Driving mode Normal » page 136.
	Driving mode Eco » page 136.
	Driving mode Individual » page 136.
	Driving mode Sport » page 136.
	Unavailable map data for Dynamic road sign display » page 150.
	Incorrect warning settings for Dynamic road sign display » page 150.

Correct and safe use

Introductory notes for correct use of the vehicle

- Read this Owner's Manual carefully to ensure that you are using the vehicle correctly. Always keep this Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- When using the vehicle, always observe the generally binding legal provisions applicable in the country of use, e.g. those for transporting children, switching off airbags, using tyres, road traffic, etc.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights and loads.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load.
- Use the specified fuel and operating fluids.
- Drive on roads that meet the vehicle technical parameters. Obstacles that exceed the vehicle's ground clearance » page 200 can damage the vehicle.
- Take care when carrying out operational, maintenance and self-assistance tasks to avoid damage or injury. If required, seek assistance from a specialised garage.
- Work on the vehicle's safety systems (seat belts and airbag system) may only be carried out by a specialist garage. This could include the seat belts or the airbag system.
- When using accessories, please follow the instructions in the accessory manufacturer's manual. These include car seats, roof racks, compressors, etc.
- Always observe the service intervals.

New vehicle or new parts

New vehicle – running in the engine

The driving style during the first 1,500 km determines the quality of the engine run-in process.

- For the first 1,000 km load the engine to maximum 3/4 of the highest permissible engine speed and avoid using a trailer.
- Over the next 500 km the engine speed can be slowly increased.

Depending on the driving style and operating conditions, the engine will consume up to 0.5 l/1,000 km. Consumption may be higher over the first 5,000 km.

New brake pads

New brake pads do not provide optimum braking during the first 800 km – they must be worn off first. So drive with extra care.

New tyres

New tyres do not provide optimum grip for the first 500 km. So drive with extra care.

Regular checks

What you should be mindful of before driving?

A vehicle with technical defects can increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

Repair any defects before driving. If required, seek assistance from a specialised garage.

Pay special attention to the following points:

- Are the tyres undamaged?
- Is the tyre tread depth sufficient?
- Is the tyre pressure sufficient?
- Do the headlights, brake and turn signals work?
- Is the windscreen in good condition?
- Are the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant levels OK?
- Is the air intake in the engine compartment free from obstruction?
- Are the air outlet nozzles and air intake in front of the windscreen free from obstruction?
- Are the windscreen wiper and washer system and windscreen wiper blades functional?
- Is the windscreen washer fluid level sufficient?
- Are the windscreen wiper blades frozen?
- Are all seat belt system components in good working order? Are the seat belts clean and the buckles free from obstruction?
- Are the spoilers undamaged?
- Are parts and components of the vehicle still visibly attached?
- Are there oil stains or other operating fluids under the vehicle?

Incorrect vehicle adjustments

Incorrect changes and maintenance can cause malfunctions and affect the vehicle's safety-relevant and other functions.

› Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist garage.
› Never place additional insulation material over the engine, e.g. a cover.
› Attach the front number plate directly to the bumper without using the number plate holder. The bracket would partially cover the ventilation grille and thus adversely affect engine cooling.

Sensor and camera maintenance

Certain functions are supported by sensors and cameras inside and outside the vehicle.

In some cases, dirt or ice and water on sensors and cameras may be detected as an obstruction or an interference with object detection.

Functionality of the sensors and cameras may also be limited for the following reasons:

› Accessories, such as a bicycle rack, are mounted on the rear of the vehicle.
› There is a load secured on the roof rack, e.g. a roof box
› The sensors or cameras are covered by a licence plate holder, stickers, additional headlights, etc.
› Ongoing calibration after repair of sensors or systems using sensors.

Therefore, observe the following instructions to ensure that the sensors and cameras function properly:

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean and do not cover or stick anything over them.
› If you suspect that the sensors and the cameras may be damaged, seek assistance from a specialist garage.
› Attach the front number plate directly to the bumper without using the number plate holder.

Engine compartment

Before you open the bonnet

Risk of scalding! Do not open the bonnet if steam or coolant is escaping.

› Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
› Remove the ignition key. On vehicles with a keyless locking system, open the driver's door.

Explanation of the warning symbols on the sticker in the engine compartment



Do not touch the engine compartment
Beware of hot parts!
Beware of rotating parts!
Risk of electric shock!
Use prescribed engine oil

When working in the engine compartment

› Keep children away from the engine compartment.
› Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may start up automatically, even when the ignition is off.
› Do not touch electrical cables. Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, especially on the 12V vehicle battery.
› Do not smoke near the engine, and keep open flames and sparks away from it.
› If you need to work in the engine compartment with the engine running, beware of rotating engine parts and electrical equipment.
› Do not leave any objects in the engine compartment.

Handling fluids

Your vehicle uses various operating fluids that can affect health or the environment when emitted. These are fuel, oils, acid from the 12V vehicle battery, coolant and brake fluid.

› Only use operating fluids outdoors or in well-ventilated areas. If necessary, wear protective equipment.
› Do not use or check operating fluids with the engine running.
› If the skin is stained by operating fluids, wash affected areas with warm water. If necessary, seek medical assistance.
› Engine oil leaks can cause fire. Wipe away any leaks using a cloth.
› Store cloths soiled with brake fluid in a well-ventilated place until disposal. Cloths with residues of engine oil can ignite and cause a fire.

12V vehicle battery

Handling the 12V vehicle battery

The acid in the 12V vehicle battery is very caustic. Incorrect handling of the 12V vehicle battery can cause an explosion, fire, chemical burns or poisoning!

- When handling the 12V vehicle battery, eye and skin protection must be worn.
- Do not tilt the 12V vehicle battery, as it may leak the battery acid.
- If battery acid comes into contact with skin, wash the affected area with water for a few minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay.
- Should electrolyte get into your eyes, rinse them immediately with water. Seek medical attention immediately.
- Do not charge a frozen or thawed 12V vehicle battery. Replace a frozen 12V vehicle battery.
- Do not use a damaged 12V vehicle battery.
- Risk of short circuit Do not connect the poles of the 12V vehicle battery.

Using vehicle electrical sockets

Incorrect use of the sockets can lead to life-threatening electric shock or fire.

- The sockets can become warm during operation. Do not touch the sockets that have become warm.
- Protect the sockets from liquids.
- If fluid does enter the power socket, dry it out completely before reusing.
- Do not insert any objects into the socket contacts.

Before your journey

Adults and children, cargo and objects – everything has its place in the vehicle. Follow the instructions below to insure optimal occupant protection in the event of an accident.

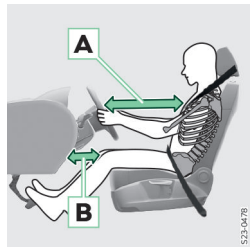
Before you set off

- Ensure that you have a good view of outside the vehicle. Attach the navigation system or other external devices so that they do not obstruct your view.
- Adjust the rear-view mirrors.
- Close all doors, the bonnet and the boot lid.
- Assume the correct sitting position, adjust the seats correctly and fasten the seat belt properly. Tell your fellow passengers to do the same.
- Always keep your seat belt on while driving.
- Only 1 person can be secured with one seat belt.
- Make sure that the seat belts are not trapped, e.g.in the door or in the seat.
- Check the seat belts, their locks and attachment points for damage.
- Do not leave any objects in the driver's footwell. They can get into the pedal area and restrict the pedal control.
- Always fix the floor mats securely in the driver's pedal area.
- Wear footwear that does not interfere with the safe operation of the pedals.

Sitting safely

For the safety of the occupants and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, follow the instructions below:

- Adjust the seat backrests to an upright position so that the whole of your back rests on them. If the front passenger seat backrest has been folded forward, only the seat behind the driver's seat may be used for transporting passengers.
- Engage the rear seat backrests correctly.
- Adjust the height-adjustable headrest so that the top of the headrest is as close as possible to the top of the head.
- The headrest on the occupied rear seat should not be in the lower position, but the upper edge of the headrest should be at the same height as the top of the head.
- Keep your feet in the footwell.
- Use the entire seat.
- Do not lean forward or sit to the side.
- Do not place any limbs out the window.

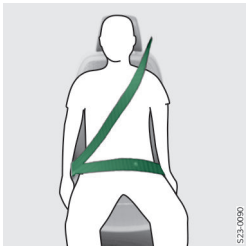


- Adjust the driver's seat longitudinally so that the pedals can be easily reached with slightly bent legs.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance **A** between the steering wheel and the breastbone is at least 25 cm.
- On a car with a driver's knee airbag, adjust the seat longitudinally so that the distance between your legs **B** and the dashboard at the location of the knee airbag is at least 6 cm.
- Adjust the angle of the backrest so that your hands rest on the top of the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

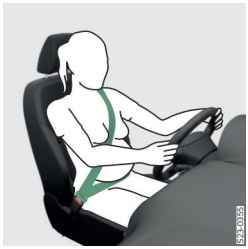
› Move the passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance from the dashboard at least 25 cm.

Correct belt webbing arrangement

The webbing arrangement is extremely important to ensure that the seat belts offer the best possible protection.



› The shoulder belt must run down the centre of the shoulder, not across the neck.
› The shoulder belt must fit snugly against the body (it must not lead over multi-layered loose clothing).
› The lap belt part must be placed in front of the pelvis and fit tightly.
› The webbing must not be pinched or twisted or rub against sharp edges.
› The webbing must not pass over solid or fragile objects under clothing, such as a key ring, etc.
› The tongue may only be inserted into the buckle of the associated seat.
› The webbing must be tight. Therefore, do not attach clamps or similar items to the webbing to adjust the seat belt according to body size.



› For pregnant women, the lap belt part must be as low as possible on the pelvis, so that there is no pressure on the abdomen.

Correct steering wheel position

Incorrect steering wheel position can lead to serious injuries to the arms, hands and head if the airbag deploys.



› Hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge in the “9 o'clock” and “3 o'clock” position.

Securing children properly

› Do not carry a child on your lap, and do not secure the child and yourself with one seat belt.
› Only transport children in a suitable child seat » page 44.

Children under 150 cm tall will not be properly protected without a child seat. Children who have been inadequately secured can be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident or a sudden manoeuvre. This can result in life-threatening injuries to yourself and other occupants.

If children lean forward or assume an incorrect sitting position during the journey, they are more likely to be injured in the event of an accident. This is especially true for children who are carried in the passenger seat – if the airbag system triggers, they could be seriously injured or killed.

Child secured in an incorrect sitting position is at risk from the side airbag



The child should not be in the deployment area of the side airbag.

Child properly secured in a child seat



There must be enough room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag for the side airbag to offer the best possible protection.

Transporting objects safely

When transporting heavy objects, the centre of gravity of the vehicle changes, and so does the handling of the vehicle.

› Adjust the driving speed and style to allow for changed behaviour.

Unsecured or incorrectly positioned items may be thrown around in the event of an accident or sudden manoeuvre. There is a risk of serious injury and loss of control of the vehicle.

In a collision at 50 km/h, unsecured objects are thrown forward with up to fifty times their weight. A thrown 1.5 litre water bottle can weigh up to 75 kg.

› Transport objects securely.
› Stow items so that they do not restrict the driver's ability to operate the vehicle.
› Keep the driver footwell clear.
› Only use laptops or other mobile devices when the vehicle is stationary.
› Stow small items in the storage boxes.
› Do not leave lockable storage boxes open.
› Do not allow items to protrude out of compartments. This does not apply to bottles in bottle trays.
› Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of fasteners and shelves.
› Do not place any objects on the dash panel or on the luggage compartment cover.
› Spread the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it so that it cannot move.
› Place heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.
› Secure vessels and packages with liquids against spillage.
› Do not leave closed bottles of liquids in the car. Closed bottles can explode due to heat or burst due to frost.

Safe driving

Introductory notes

› Pay attention when you are driving. As a driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.
› Always adjust your driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.

Paying attention to warning signals

The driver information system warns you with indicator lights and messages in the event of any faults.

Failure to follow the warnings may increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

› If the vehicle issues a warning signal, park the vehicle safely and follow the information on the instrument cluster and in this Owner's Manual.

Using assistance systems

The assistance systems are only for support and do not absolve you from your responsibility for driving safely.

The assistance systems are subject to physical and technical limitations. Therefore, in certain situations, system reactions may be perceived as undesirable or delayed.

› Stay alert and be ready to intervene.
› Familiarise yourself with the assistance systems, their limitations and operating conditions.
› Activate, deactivate and adjust the assistance systems so that you have full control of the vehicle in any traffic situation.

The detection ranges of parking systems have blind spots where obstacles and people are not detected.

› When using parking systems, look in the direction in which you are parking and keep an eye on the area around the car.
› Pay special attention to small children, animals and objects.

Driving with a substitute spare wheel or emergency wheel

A substitute spare wheel or emergency wheel *» page 170* is only used to reach the nearest specialist garage.

› Inflate the wheel to the max. prescribed inflation pressure.
› Follow the instructions on the warning label on the rim.
› Do not cover the warning label.
› Avoid full acceleration, strong braking and fast cornering.
› Do not drive with more than one spare wheel mounted.
› Avoid using snow chains on the temporary spare wheel.

Driving with a loaded roof rack

When transporting objects on the roof rack, the vehicle's driving behaviour changes.

› Adapt your speed and driving style to allow for this.

Driving with a trailer

The vehicle driving characteristics change with a trailer attached. The behaviour of the assistance systems may also be different.

› Drive slowly, because excessive speed can lead to loss of control.

› Keep a greater distance from the vehicle in front of you.
› Do not exceed the maximum vertical load of the tow ball and the permissible trailer weight.

Driving through water

There must be no water ingress into the vehicle, e.g. the engine intake.

› Therefore, determine the depth before driving through water. The water level must not exceed the lower edge of the lower beam.
› Drive at max. walking speed. Otherwise, a wave may form in front of the vehicle, increasing the water level.
› Never stop in the water, do not reverse or stop the engine.

Is something wrong?

› Pay attention to changes in vehicle handling.
› If you have any safety concerns, stop driving and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
› Unusual vibrations or the vehicle 'pulling' to the side may indicate a puncture.
› If the tyre pressure loss is very sudden, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.
› Immediately remove foreign objects stuck in the tyre tread.
› Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated the tyre.

  Check the tyre pressure and seek assistance from a specialised garage.
› Immediately remove any objects jammed under the floor of the vehicle. These can damage the vehicle or ignite and cause a fire.

Stop the vehicle safely

If the vehicle is not safely secured against moving off, it can do so spontaneously and cause an accident.

› Choose a place with a suitable surface for parking; always park the car on a solid and level surface.
› Pay extra attention on downhill surfaces with reduced grip such as snow, ice, mud or sand.
› Do not park the vehicle on flammable materials such as dried leaves or spilt fuel. Hot vehicle parts may cause a fire.

Carry out the following activities in the specified order when parking:

1. Stop the vehicle and keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
3. For vehicles with an automatic gearbox, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
4. Turn off the engine.
5. For vehicles with manual transmission, engage 1. gear or reverse gear.
6. Release the brake pedal.

Exiting the vehicle

Do not leave children or other people or animals unattended in the vehicle.

› Injuries can occur when handling seats, releasing the parking brake etc.
› In emergency situations it may not be possible to leave the vehicle or resolve the situation.
› Very high or very low temperatures may pose a danger to life.
› The SAFE function is activated when the vehicle is locked. This makes it impossible to open the doors or windows from the inside.

  Turn off the SAFE function, if some persons remain in the locked vehicle » *page 28*.

Different climatic conditions

If you wish to operate your vehicle in countries with different climatic conditions from those specified, contact a Škoda Partner. They will tell you the following:

› Is it possible to drive the car in your country?
› Are there any measures that need to be taken to ensure that the car is fully functional?
› Are there any measures that need to be taken to prevent damage to the vehicle, e.g. changing the coolant, the 12V vehicle battery, and similar?

Emergency calls

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

› Emergency calls cannot be made if there is a system fault.
› Availability of a mobile network is indispensable for establishing a connection to the emergency number.
› This emergency service is only available in certain countries.
› If the vehicle is located in an area without a functioning emergency call system infrastructure, no vehicle data will be transmitted to the emergency call centre.

Emergency call system battery backup

The backup battery ensures the function of the emergency call system even if the 12V vehicle battery is disconnected or defective.

The lifetime of the backup battery is at least 3 years, so it is recommended to have it checked by a specialized garage after this time.

Discharged or damaged backup battery

If the battery is discharged or damaged, a message will appear on the instrument panel display.

› Have the battery checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Environment

› Discharged batteries must not be disposed of in household waste.

› Dispose of discharged batteries in an environmentally-friendly way.

Functionality

After the call is initiated, the emergency call centre will also receive the following information:

› The location and severity of the accident

› The number of passengers involved

› Vehicle identification number (VIN)

Once the connection has been established, communication with the emergency call centre takes place via the loudspeaker and microphone installed in the vehicle.

Serious accident – automatic call

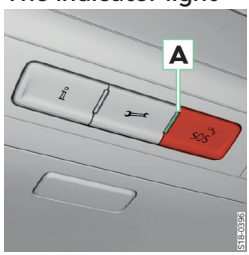
In the event of an accident where the airbag or belt tensioner activates, a call is automatically made to the emergency call centre.

An automatic call to the emergency call line is also initiated when the Emergency Assist system intervenes.

Minor accident – call option

The Infotainment screen displays the option to set up a connection to the emergency call centre or breakdown service.

The indicator light



Option 1

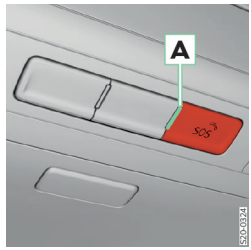
The system status is displayed when the ignition is switched on and the warning light A illuminates.

› Illuminated green – the system is functional

› Flashing green – a call is in progress with the emergency line

› Illuminated red – there is a fault in the system, seek immediate assistance from a professional garage

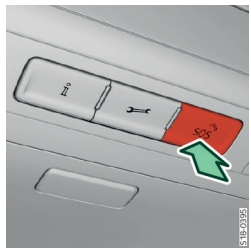
› Not illuminated – the system is inoperative due to prolonged unavailability of the mobile network. If this condition persists, seek assistance from a professional garage



Option 2

Operation

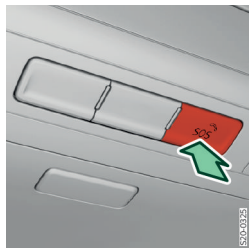
Manual call



Option 1

1. Keep the SOS button pressed down.
2. Confirm the connection to the emergency call centre on the Infotainment screen.

   If you do not confirm the call, the connection to the emergency line will be established automatically after 10 seconds.



Option 2

The emergency call button is under the cover marked with the SOS symbol.

To cancel dialling

› To cancel dialling to the emergency call centre before starting the call, press the SOS button again.

Or:

› Cancel dialling using the Infotainment system screen.

ⓘ A call can be made manually, for example to report an accident in which you are not directly involved.

Video – Emergency call

Emergency call – operation

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-fabia4-breakdown-call

After an accident

What to do after an accident

Where possible, follow the instructions below:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
3. Put on the reflective vest.
4. Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
5. Keep safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
6. Report the accident to the emergency services.
7. Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

Safety systems

After an accident, the vehicle's safety systems, e.g. seatbelts and airbag system, may be out of action.

› Have the vehicle's safety systems checked by a specialist garage, even if no load or trip has occurred.

› Have the damaged, loaded or triggered safety system components replaced by a specialist garage.

What to do in the event of a fire

Where possible, follow the instructions below:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
3. Put on the reflective vest.
4. Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
5. Keep safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
6. Report the fire to the emergency services.
7. Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

Key, locks and alarm

Key

Key overview

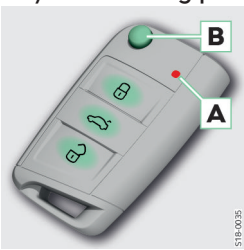
⚠ WARNING

Unauthorised persons (e.g. children) can lock the vehicle, start it or use electrical equipment such as the control buttons for the windows.

› When leaving the vehicle, keep the keys with you.

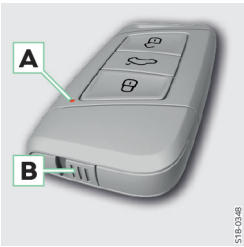
The vehicle is equipped with one of the following keys:

Key with folding part



- The vehicle is locked
- Operating the boot lid
- The vehicle is unlocked
- **A** Battery status warning light in the key
- **B** Locking button for folding the key part in/out

Key with removable part



- The vehicle is locked
- Operating the boot lid
- The vehicle is unlocked
- **A** Battery status warning light in the key
- **B** Locking button for removing the key part

⚠ NOTICE

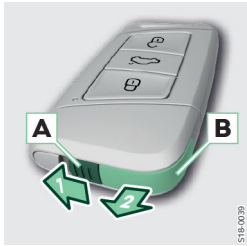
› Protect the key from moisture and strong vibrations.

› Keep the grooves in the key clean.

The key signal rage is approximately 30 m. The range can be reduced, e.g. due to signal interference from other transmitters.

If you lose your key, contact your Škoda Service Partner who will provide you with a replacement key.

Removing the key part



1. Unlock the **A** lug.
2. Remove the key part **B**.



Troubleshooting

The battery in the key is almost empty

› The warning light does not flash when a button on the key is pressed.

Or:

› The display in the instrument cluster shows a message that the battery needs to be replaced.

› Replace the battery » *page 28, Replacing the key battery*.

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control

This may be because:

› The battery in the key is empty.

› Replace the battery » *page 28, Replacing the key battery*.

Or:

› The key is not synchronised.

Synchronise the key as follows:

1. Press any button on the key.

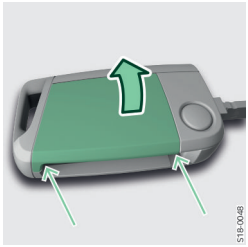
2. Unlock the door with the key via the locking cylinder within 1 min. » page 30.

If necessary, the key must be synchronised if a button on the key has been repeatedly pressed outside of the remote control's effective range.

Replacing the key battery

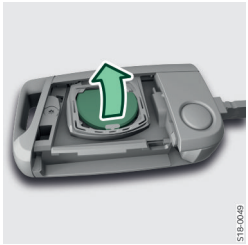
The new battery must comply with the specification of the original battery

Key with folding part



Removing the battery cover:

1. Fold out the key.
2. Release the battery cover with your thumbnail or by inserting a flat-head screwdriver at the marked points.
3. Open the battery cover.



Replacing the battery:

1. Remove the battery.
2. Press any button on the remote key to reset the key.
3. Insert the new battery.
4. Fit the battery cover and press until it clicks into place.

⚠ WARNING

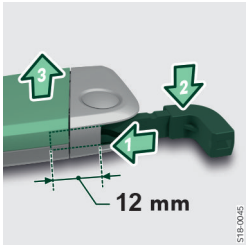
Risk of death!

If the battery is swallowed, serious injuries or death due to chemical burns to the digestive tract could result.

› Always keep children away from the vehicle key and batteries.

› Obtain medical attention immediately if the battery is swallowed.

Key with removable part



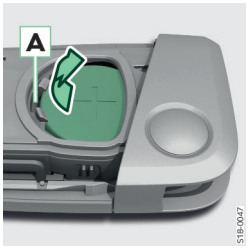
Removing the battery cover:

1. Remove the key part and insert it partially into the slot.
2. Push the key part to release the top cover.



Replacing the battery:

› Slide the battery cover off.



1. Insert a thin screwdriver into the A hole and remove the battery.
2. Press any button on the remote key to reset the key.
3. Insert the new battery.
4. Fit the battery cover and press until it clicks into place.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of death!

If the battery is swallowed, serious injuries or death due to chemical burns to the digestive tract could result.

› Always keep children away from the vehicle key and batteries.

› Obtain medical attention immediately if the battery is swallowed.

If you are unsure about how the battery should be replaced, we recommend contacting your Škoda Service Partner.

Environment

› Discharged batteries must not be disposed of in household waste.

› Dispose of discharged batteries in an environmentally-friendly way.

Dispose of the vehicle key in accordance with all applicable disposal regulations.

Central locking

Functionality

Central locking

The system unlocks and locks all doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid at the same time.

Unlock indicator: Double flashing of the turn signal lights

Lock indicator: Single flashing of the turn signal lights.

The indicator light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then regularly at longer intervals.

If none of the doors or the boot lid is opened within 45 seconds of unlocking, the vehicle automatically locks again.

The SAFE function

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the central locking system may include the SAFE function.

The SAFE function disables the internal door handles from being used to open the doors after locking the car.

The SAFE function is automatically activated when the car is locked from the outside.

When the ignition is switched off, a message on the SAFE function appears on the instrument cluster screen.

⚠ DANGER

Danger to life!

› There must be no persons in a locked vehicle with the SAFE function activated.

Switching off the SAFE function

› Double command to lock within 2 seconds.

Or:

› Together with the deactivation of interior monitoring » page 32, Settings.

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then it goes out and after 30 seconds it flashes regularly at longer intervals.

If the SAFE function is switched off, you can open the door from the inside by pulling once the handle.

The SAFE function is activated again when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Automatic locking and unlocking

The automatic locking system can prevent unauthorised entry into the vehicle during a short stop.

When the speed exceeds 15 km/h, all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are automatically locked. Locking is indicated by the lighting up of the symbol in the central locking button.

The vehicle will unlock automatically in an accident when the airbags are activated. Automatic unlocking allows help to access the car in an emergency situation.

You can also unlock the car in one of the following ways:

› Open some of the doors from the inside.

› Press the central locking button

› Remove the key from the ignition (depending on vehicle equipment)

Operation

Central locking operation

Depending on vehicle equipment:

› Key » page 27

› Keyless locking (KESSY) » page 31

› Central locking button

Locking/unlocking using the central locking button

› Press the button on the centre console

The symbol in the button lights up when it is locked.

The button locks/unlocks all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

The vehicle can also be unlocked by opening the door from the inside.

⚠ WARNING

A vehicle locked with the central locking button can hinder access for help in the event of an accident or emergency.

Setting the unlocking and locking function

› Select the following menu from the Infotainment system:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

All doors

All doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap unlock.

Single door

The button on the key can be used to unlock the front door and the fuel filler flap.

Applies to vehicles with keyless locking system:

The driver's door and the fuel filler flap will unlock when you grip the driver's door handle. The other doors and the boot lid are also unlocked when you grip the door handle again.

Gripping one of the other handles will unlock all the doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Doors on one side of the vehicle

The button can be used to unlock the door on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the door near to which the key is located and the fuel filler flap are unlocked by holding the door handle.

Pressing again unlocks the other doors and the boot lid.

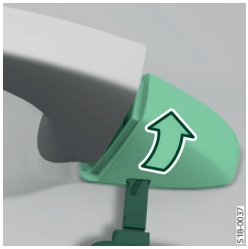
Troubleshooting

Central locking fault

› The warning light in the drivers door first flashes for 2 seconds in quick succession.
› It then lights up continuously.
› After 30 seconds, it starts flashing slowly.
› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

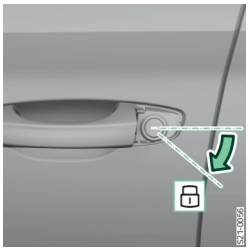
The vehicle cannot be locked – the key battery is flat

Applies to right-hand drive.



Removing the cover:

1. Pull and hold the left front door handle.
2. Insert the key part into the slot on the underside of the cover.
3. Lift the cover in the direction of the arrow.
4. Release the door handle.



Locking:

1. Take the passenger seat.
2. Close all doors.
3. Lock the vehicle with the central locking button.
4. Get out of the vehicle and close the doors.
5. The key with a folding part: insert the key into the lock cylinder with the buttons on the **left** and lock the vehicle.

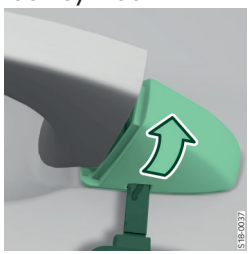
   The key with a removable part: insert the removed part into the lock cylinder with the handle facing **downwards** and lock the vehicle.
6. Check that the vehicle is locked.

Fitting the cover:

1. Pull the door handle and hold it.
2. Replace the cover.
3. Release the door handle.

Mechanically unlocking and locking the door

Removing and fitting the door cover with lock cylinder



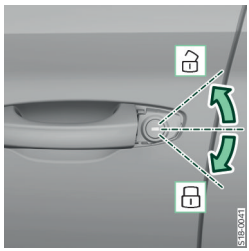
Removing the cover:

1. Pull and hold the left front door handle.
2. Insert the key into the recess on the underside of the cover.
3. Lift the cover in the direction of the arrow.
4. Release the door handle.

Fitting the cover:

1. Pull the door handle and hold it.
2. Replace the cover.
3. Release the door handle.

Unlocking the door with the lock cylinder



Key with folding part:

› Insert the key into the lock cylinder with the buttons on the **right** and unlock the vehicle.

Key with removable part:

› Insert the removed part into the lock cylinder with the handle facing **downwards** and unlock the vehicle.

This applies to cars equipped with the SAFE function:

Unlocking will unlock all doors.

Applies to vehicles without SAFE function:

Unlocking will unlock only the driver's door.

Locking the door with the lock cylinder

Locking the door with the key with the folding part:

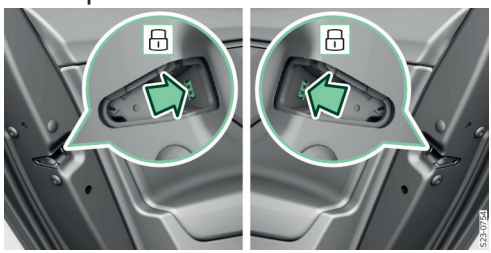
› Insert the key into the lock cylinder with the buttons on the **left** and lock the vehicle.

Locking the door with the key with the removable part:

› Insert the removed part into the lock cylinder with the handle facing **downwards** and lock the vehicle.

Locking will lock all doors.

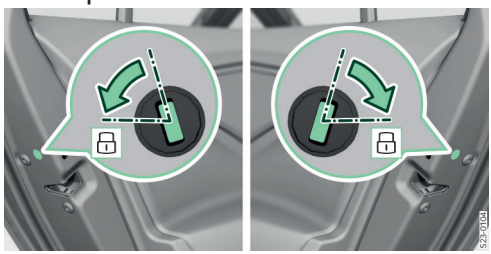
Locking the door without the lock cylinder – option 1



1. Open the door.
2. Insert the key or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.
3. Use the key or a flat-blade screwdriver to push it in towards the door.
4. Close the door.

Once closed, the door is locked.

Locking the door without the lock cylinder – option 2



1. Open the door.
2. On a vehicle equipped with a slot cover, remove the cover.
3. Insert the key or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.
4. Turn the key or the flathead screwdriver towards the outside of the vehicle (sprung position).
5. Close the door.

Once closed, the door is locked.

Keyless locking

Use

The keyless locking system (KESSY) allows you to unlock and lock the car without actively using the key.

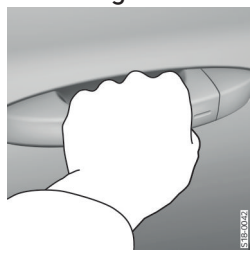
Operation

Keep the key with you when unlocking and locking.

The door handle sensors are designed to be operated with the bare hand, e.g. a gloved hand may limit the function of the sensors.

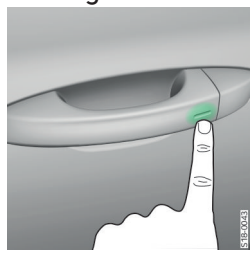
ⓘ If the door handle is dirty, the function of the sensors may be limited.

Unlocking



1. Hold the door handle.
2. Open the door.

Locking



› Touch the sensor.

After locking, it is not possible to unlock the door within 2 seconds by holding the handle. This allows you to check whether the car is locked.

Unlocking the boot lid

› Press the handle on the boot lid.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle

If the key is locked inside the vehicle, the vehicle will unlock itself automatically. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

If the key is locked in the boot, the boot lid will automatically unlock itself.

⚠ NOTICE

If you lock the key in the car or in the luggage compartment and it is covered by a phone, laptop or similar device, the key signal may be obscured and the car will not unlock automatically.

Settings

Deactivate keyless locking

1. Lock the vehicle with the button on the key.
2. Touch the sensor on the external door handle with your finger within 5 seconds.

   Deactivation is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.
3. To check the deactivation, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the exterior door handle.

   The door should remain locked.

Keyless locking is automatically reactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Troubleshooting

Keyless locking fault

1. Lock or unlock the vehicle with the button on the key.
2. Then try to unlock or lock the vehicle using the sensor on the door handle.
3. If keyless locking still does not work, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Automatic deactivation of keyless locking

If the vehicle is not unlocked for a longer period of time, the function may be deactivated automatically.

1. Lock or unlock the vehicle with the button on the key.
2. Then try to unlock or lock the vehicle using the sensor on the door handle.
3. If keyless locking still does not work, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

No key found when the ignition is switched on



illuminated
Message: No key found in the vehicle

› Put the key in the vehicle.

Video – Keyless locking (KESSY)

KESSY - operation

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-fabia4-kessy

Alarm

Functionality

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals during a break-in or towing attempt.

The alarm system is automatically activated approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

The alarm system is automatically deactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Alarm triggering

The activated alarm system triggers an alarm when the following events occur:

› Opening the bonnet
› Opening the boot lid
› Opening the door
› Tampering with the ignition lock
› Towing the vehicle
› Movement inside the vehicle
› Sudden and significant voltage drop in the vehicle's power network.
› The trailer is disconnected
› Opening the door unlocked via the lock cylinder

Switching off the triggered alarm

› Unlock the vehicle.

Or:

› Turn on the ignition.

Operating conditions

The alarm system will only operate correctly when all the windows are closed.

The trailer is integrated into the alarm system under the following conditions:

✓ The vehicle is equipped with a factory-fitted towing bracket.
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle via the towing bracket socket.
✓ The trailer is not equipped with LED tail lights.

If the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted on a vehicle with an activated alarm, a warning alarm will sound.

Deactivate the alarm before connecting or disconnecting the trailer.

Settings

The following alarm functions can be deactivated at the same time:

› Interior monitoring
› Towing alert

Deactivation also disables the SAFE function *» page 28, Functionality*.

Deactivation

› Press twice the button on the key within 2 seconds.

Or:

› On the Infotainment system, choose the menu **CAR** > > > the item for interior monitoring.

Or:

› On the Infotainment system choose the menu **MENU** > > > > the item for interior monitoring.

The deactivated functions are reactivated when the vehicle is unlocked and locked.

Deactivation is to be carried out if the vehicle is, for example, towed or transported.

Troubleshooting

Alarm fault

› The warning light in the drivers door first flashes for 2 seconds in quick succession.

› It then lights up continuously.
› After 30 seconds, it starts flashing slowly.
› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Doors, windows and the boot lid

Doors

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

A badly closed door can open while you are driving.

› Pull over, close the door and check that it is fully closed and secure.

⚠ WARNING

An open door may close in strong winds or on a gradient even if it is partially secured by the door limiter.

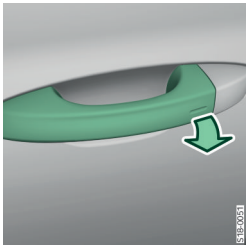
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Only operate the door when there are no persons or objects in the opening and closing area.

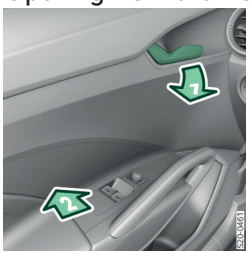
Opening/closing the door

Opening from the outside



› Unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle.

Opening from the inside



› Pull the door handle and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

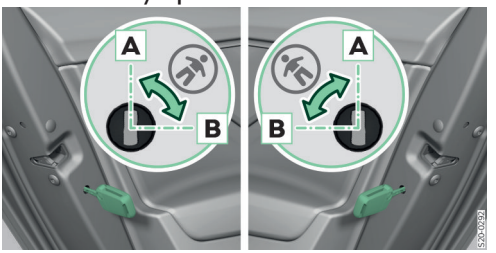
› Hold the handle and close the door.

Child safety lock on the rear doors

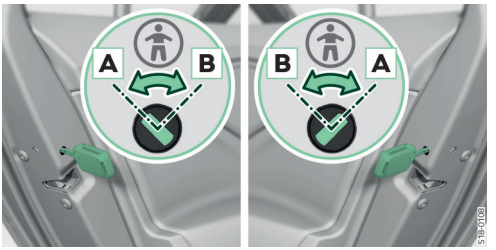
Operation

The child lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

Mechanically operated child lock



Option 1



Option 2

› Turn the child lock with the vehicle key part or a flat-head screwdriver.

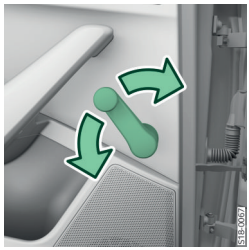
A Child lock turned off

B Child lock turned on

Windows – with manual operation

Operation

ⓘ When the windows are open, troublesome noises may occur at certain speeds.



› Turn the handle in the respective direction.

Windows – with electrical operation

What you should be mindful of

Force limiter

The vehicle has a force limiter to reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is interrupted and the glass pane retracts by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents it from being closed again for the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window moves back several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds, and the obstacle has not been removed, the closing process will be stopped. At this time, it is not possible to close the windows automatically by pulling the button up completely. However, the force limiter is functional.

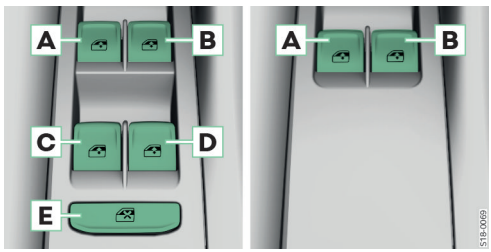
The force limiter will not operate if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds. The window will now close at full force! If you wait more than 10 seconds, the force limiter will be switched on again.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Although the windows are fitted with a force limiter, exercise caution when closing them.

Overview of the operating buttons on the driver's door



Depending on vehicle equipment:

- **A** Front left window
- **B** Front right window
- **C** Rear left window
- **D** Rear right window
- **E** Deactivation/activation of the buttons in the rear doors.

Operation

ⓘ When the windows are open, troublesome noises may occur at certain speeds.

Opening

› Press and hold the respective button lightly until the window opens to the desired position.

Or:

› Press the control down and the window opens automatically. Pressing the control again will stop the opening process.

Closing

› Pull the respective button lightly up and hold it until the window closes to the desired position.

Or:

› Push up the corresponding control until it stops; the window closes automatically. Pushing the control up again stops the closing process.

ⓘ After the ignition is switched off, the windows can still be opened and closed for about 10 minutes, provided none of the doors is opened.

Opening all windows simultaneously

› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the button fully depressed down to operate the driver's window.

Closing all windows simultaneously

› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the button all the way up to operate the driver's window.

Or:

› On vehicles with keyless locking, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the front door handle.

Closing he windows is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.

Settings

Window operation can be set in the following Infotainment system menu:

CAR > > > item for window operation

Or:

MENU > > > > item for window operation

Troubleshooting

The window regulator stops working after repeated opening and closing

The window regulator mechanism may be overheated.

› Allow the window regulator mechanism to cool down.

The window does not operate after the 12V vehicle battery is disconnected.

› Activate window operation *» page 36, Activation after disconnecting the 12V vehicle battery*.

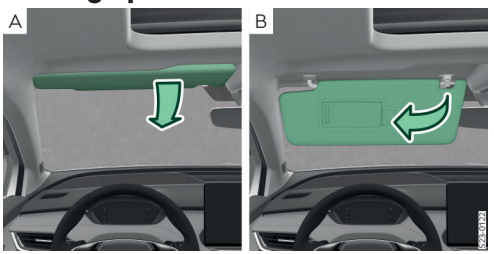
Activation after disconnecting the 12V vehicle battery

Automatic window operation activation

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Push up the respective button and the window closes.
3. Release the button.
4. Push up the button up again and hold it for 1 second.

Sun visors

Folding up and down



A Swivel the front visor towards the windscreen.

B Swivel the front visor towards the door.

⚠ CAUTION

Objects attached to the sun visors can restrict the view to the outside.
In the event of sudden braking or an impact, these can also cause injuries.

› Do not attach a bike rack to the tailgate.

Boot lid – with manual operation

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Only operate the lid when there are no persons or objects in the opening and closing area of the lid.

› Do not press on the glass when closing the lid.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not attach any racks, such as bicycle racks or luggage racks, to the boot lid.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the lid prop!

› Do not attach any objects such as stickers, adhesive tapes, etc. to the strut rods.

› Do not touch the strut rods with gloves or other textile objects.

› Do not push against the rods.

Operation

Unlocking



› To unlock the lid, hold the button.

If no door is opened within 120 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

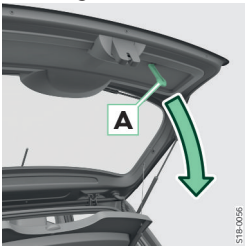
Opening



› Press the handle and lift the lid.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once the speed of 5 km/h is reached. It is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Closing



› Hold the fixture A and pull the lid down.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of opening the tailgate while driving!

› Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the tailgate.

Setting a delayed lid lock

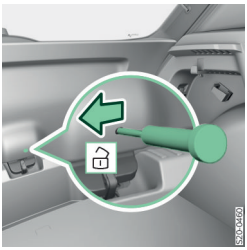
If the lid is unlocked with the button on the key, the lid is automatically locked again after closing.

The lid's automatic locking delay can be extended by a specialist garage.

Releasing the boot lid

Releasing

If the boot lid does not open, it can be released manually using the following procedure.



1. Insert a screwdriver into the opening in the panel.
2. Release the boot lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

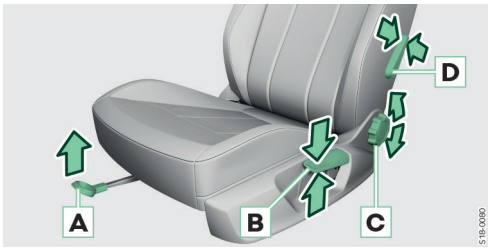
Seats, steering wheel and mirrors

Front seat – with manual operation

Seat controls

⚠ WARNING

› Seats can only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary.



A Adjusting in longitudinal direction
The latch should engage audibly once the lever is released.

B Adjust the height

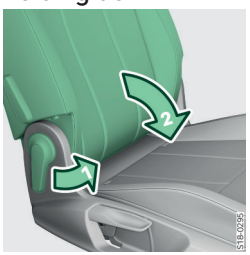
C Adjust the backrest angle
Do not lean against the backrest during adjustment.

D Adjusting the lumbar support: degree of curvature

ⓘ After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Folding backrest of the passenger seat

Folding down



1. Pull the control lever.
2. Fold down the backrest until it audibly clicks.

Folding back up

1. Pull the control lever.
2. Fold up the backrest until you hear a click.

Rear seats

Folding down the backrests

Before folding down

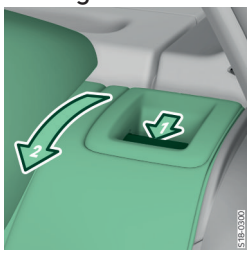
1. Insert the rear headrests as far as they will go or remove them.
2. Adjust the position of the front seats so that they are not damaged by the folded-down backrests.
3. Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the seat belts

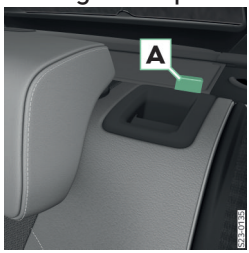
› Seat belts must not be fastened when you are handling the backrests.

Folding down



› Press the release handle and fold the backrest forwards.

Folding back up



1. Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.
2. Fold the seat backrest back up.
   The release handle should click audibly into place.
3. Check that the backrest is locked in place. The **A** pin must not be visible.

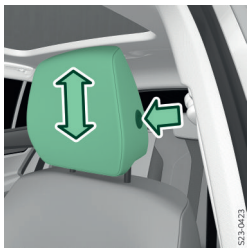
Rear seat belt parking position



Headrests

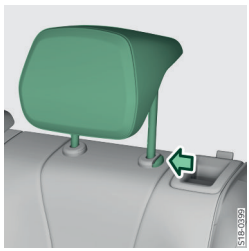
Adjusting the headrests

Front headrests



› Hold the locking button and move the headrest in the desired direction.

Rear headrests

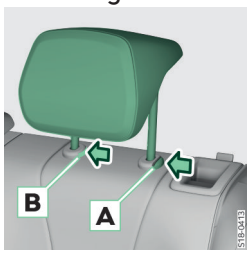


› Move the headrest in the desired direction.

When pushing it down, press and hold the safety button.

Removing and inserting the rear headrests

Removing



1. Partially fold the respective backrest forwards.
2. Move the headrest up to the stop.
3. Press simultaneously the A and B locking buttons and remove the headrest.

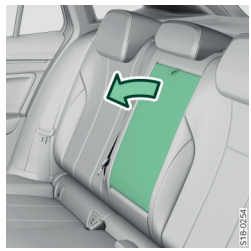
Inserting

› Insert the headrest into the backrest.

The safety button must click into place.

Rear armrest

Settings



› Fold down the armrest.

The folded-down armrest can be used as a storage table.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

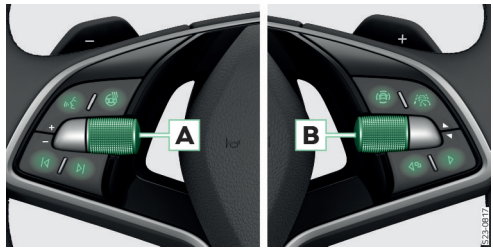
› Handle the armrest with care.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not sit on the armrest.

Steering wheel

Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel



- Switching voice control on/off
- Steering wheel heating » page 64
- A **Turning** – adjusting the volume
  Pressing – switching the sound on/off
- Switching to the next track/station played
- Switching to the previous track/station played
- Switching some assist systems
- Switching between Travel Assist and ACC » page 149
- B **Turning** – selecting from items in the assistance systems menu under the button
  Pressing – confirming an item in the assistance systems menu

The ◁ and ▷ buttons are used to control the instrument cluster:

› Digital screen » page 65
› Virtual cockpit » page 67

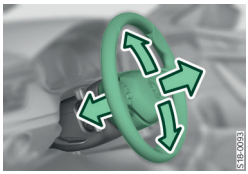
Setting the steering wheel position

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
› Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.



› Pull the safety lever downwards.



› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



› Press the safety lever as far as it will go.

Troubleshooting

Power assisted steering fault

illuminates – total failure of the power assisted steering, failure of steering assistance

1. Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few metres.
2. If the warning light does not go out, stop driving. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

illuminates – partial failure of the power assisted steering, possible reduction in power steering

1. Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few metres.
2. If the warning light does not go out, you may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Steering column lock fault

flashing
Message indicating steering column lock fault

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Once the ignition has been switched off, it is no longer possible to switch on ignition, lock the steering or switch on the electrical components.

flashing
Message indicating steering column lock fault

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Steering column lock not active

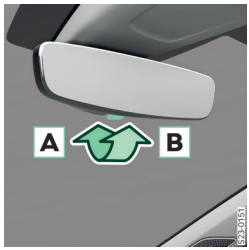
flashing
Message indicating the required steering wheel movement

1. Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth.
2. If the steering does not unlock, stop the vehicle and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Interior mirror

Operation

Interior mirror with manual darkening



A Mirror not darkened
B Mirror darkened

Interior mirror with automatic darkening

Darkening of the mirror is automatically controlled by the sensors in the mirror once the engine is started.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of an accident!
A glowing display e.g. a mobile phone or navigation device may affect the function of the automatic mirror darkening.
› Do not attach these devices close to the mirror.

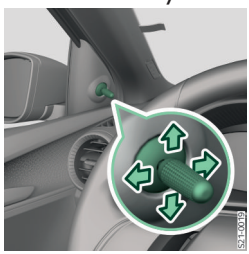
Exterior mirrors

Operation

Depending on the equipment, the mirrors can be folded in manually or electrically.

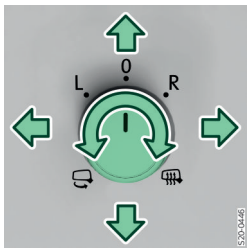
Depending on the equipment, the mirrors can be folded in manually or electrically.

Adjusting the mirror glass with the mechanical rotary control



› Turn the rotary knob in the direction of the arrows.

Adjusting the mirrors with the electric control



L Adjusting the left-hand exterior mirror

0 Switching off operation

R Adjusting the right-hand exterior mirror

Folding the mirror in electrically (to fold back out, select a different control position)

Heating the mirrors with the engine running (to switch off the heating, select a different position of the control)

Adjusting the mirror surface

1. Select the position **L** or **R**.
2. Turn the rotary knob in the direction of the arrows.

Automatic folding of electrically foldable mirrors

If this function is activated, the mirrors are folded in when the vehicle is locked and folded back when it is unlocked.

The vehicle is not necessarily locked when the mirrors fold in. Vehicle locking is indicated by flashing turn signal lights.

Manually foldable mirrors

› Fold the mirror towards the side window by pressing with your hand.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

The exterior mirrors make objects appear farther away.

› Use the rear-view mirror to determine the distance of vehicles behind.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of mirror damage!

› If the electrically foldable mirror is accidentally knocked out by external influences, e.g. due to an impact during manoeuvring, fold the mirror in using the rotary knob and wait for an audible click.

Settings

Automatic folding of electrically foldable mirrors is activated or deactivated in the following Infotainment menu:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Troubleshooting

Fault in the electric mirror glass control

› Press lightly on the edge of the mirror surface with your fingers to adjust it.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of getting burned!

› Do not touch the heated exterior mirror glass.

Restraint systems and airbags

Seat belts

Use

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer very good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed or altered in any way.
- If the driver's seat belt is damaged, stop driving.
- If another seat belt is damaged, the seat must not be occupied.
- Do not repair damaged seat belts yourself.
- Have a damaged seat belt replaced immediately by a specialist garage.

Functionality

Automatic belt retractor

The automatic retractor locks the belt if it is pulled suddenly. The belts lock, for example, during sudden braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

⚠ WARNING

- If the seat belt does not lock when pulled suddenly, have the retractor checked by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Belt tensioners on the front and rear seat belt retractors increase the safety of the **belted up** driver, the front passenger and the rear seat passengers wearing their seat belts.

During a collision of certain force, the seat belt is tightened by the belt tensioner to prevent unwanted body movement.

The belt tensioner can also be deployed when the seat belt is not fastened.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of overturning, **light** collision or accidents in which no major forces are produced.

🛈 Smoke is released when the belt tensioner is deployed. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

The display may vary, depending on its type:

illuminates – unfastened seat belt at the front or rear

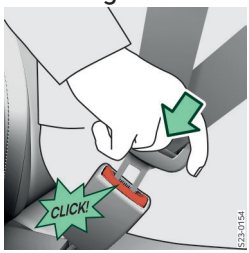
illuminated – a rear seat belt not fastened

illuminated – a rear seat belt fastened

illuminated – a rear seat belt fastened

Operation

Fastening the seat belt



1. Hold the lock tongue and slowly pull the belt over the chest and pelvis towards the buckle.
2. Insert the lock tongue into the buckle until there is an audible click.
3. Pull on the belt to ensure that the lock tongue is securely fastened.

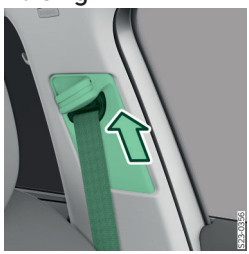
Unfastening the seat belt



1. Hold the buckle latch and release it by pressing the red button.
2. Hold the belt so it does not twist when rolling up.

Settings

Raising



› Slide the turning loop up.

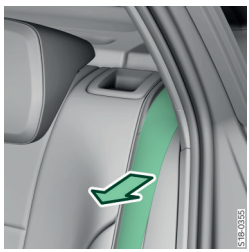
Lowering



1. Press the lock.
2. Slide the turning loop down.
3. After adjustment, check that the belt turning loop is properly secured and that the belt locks securely by pulling sharply on the belt.

Troubleshooting

Blocked belt retractor



1. Hold the strap in the middle and pull smoothly.
2. Hold the strap and let it roll up slowly.
3. Pull on the strap to check if the retractor is working properly.
4. If the strap is still blocked, repeat the unlocking procedure once or twice.
5. If the strap is still blocked, seek help from a specialist garage.

Child seat

What you should be mindful of

To install and use the child seat, follow the instructions in this Owner's Manual as well as the child seat manufacturer's manual.

For safety reasons, we always recommend that children are transported in the back seats using the child seat with the ISOFIX.

Transport children in the front passenger seat only in exceptional cases. We also recommend you to use the child seat with the ISOFIX.

Only use child seats that comply with the regulations ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 of the European Economic Commission.

Child seats in accordance with the standards ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 are marked with: a large E in a circle, with the test number below.

We recommend using child seats from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range. These child seats have been tested for use in Škoda vehicles and comply with the ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129 regulation.

ⓘ NOTICE

Incorrectly attaching the child seat or installing a non-approved type of child seat can cause irreversible damage to the ISOFIX system, the retaining rings and other vehicle parts.

⚠ WARNING

› When installing the child seat in the rear seat, adjust the front seat so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child carried in the child seat.

› Before installing a forward-facing child seat, adjust the headrest so that it is as low as possible.

› If the headrest prevents the child seat from being fitted, adjust the headrest to the highest position.

› When fitting a child seat, avoid contact between the seat and the ceiling and the rear pillar of the vehicle body. If the head airbag is deployed, there is a risk of injury.

› If using a separate child seat cushion, adjust the headrest so that the child's head is flush with, but not protruding above, the top edge of the headrest.

ⓘ NOTICE

Incorrectly attaching the child seat or installing a non-approved type of child seat can cause irreversible damage to the ISOFIX system, the retaining rings and other vehicle parts.

› When installing the child seat, push it all the way up against the backrest so that there is stable contact between the child seat and the backrest.

› For a child seat with a support leg, adjust the height of the support leg so that there is stable contact between the child seat and the vehicle seat, and so that it is secured against movement.

Using a child seat in the front passenger seat

When using a child seat in the passenger seat, all country-specific regulations must be observed.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of death or serious injury to the child!

› Never use a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, which is protected by an active airbag in front of the child.

This is also indicated by the following stickers:

A



B



A Sticker on the front passenger's sun visor

B Sticker on the centre pillar on the passenger side

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat in the front passenger seat:

› When using a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, it is absolutely essential to deactivate the front passenger airbag » page 49.

› If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is vertical, to ensure that there is secure contact between the backrest and the child seat.

› If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and another child seat that may be placed behind it.

› Adjust the height-adjustable front seat as high as possible.

› Position the front passenger seat belt as high as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the seat belt causing a neck injury to the child being transported!

› For child seats in groups 2 and 3, ensure that the guide fitting attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the seat belt height adjuster on the central body pillar.

› Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt passes through the guide fitting without kinking and is not bent over the edge of the guide fitting.

⚠ WARNING

› Activate the front passenger airbag when you are no longer using a rear-facing child seat in the passenger seat.

Applies to Taiwan.

In accordance with the legal regulations, toddlers, infants and children are not allowed to sit in the front seat. This is indicated by the following sticker on the passenger sun visor.



Recommended child seats

We recommend using child seats from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range. These child seats have been tested for use in Škoda vehicles, they are approved for these vehicles and comply with the ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129 regulation.

For more information on child seats from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range, contact your Škoda Partner or visit the Škoda website.

For optimal protection, it is recommended to use the child car seat of Group 2–3 with the backrest and the SecureGuard lap belt guide if the child car seat is equipped with it.

Classification by weight groups

Child seats are divided into groups in accordance with the ECE-R 44 regulation.

Category	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0+	up to 13 kg
1	9–18 kg
2	15–25 kg
3	22–36 kg

Fasteners for child seats

Use of child seats

Overview of applicability of child seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 regulation:

Child seats that use the ISOFIX system

Category	Size category of child seat [a]	Passenger seat	
		With activated front airbag [b]	Without activated front airbag [b]
0 (up to 10 kg)	E	X	IL
0+ (up to 13 kg)	E D C	X	IL
1 (9–18 kg)	D C B B1 A	IUF	IL IUF
2 (15–25 kg)	–	IUF	IL
3 (22–36 kg)	–	IUF	IL

[a] The size category of the child seat is indicated on the child seat plate.

[b] The seat is suitable for ISO/R3 mounting.

Category	Size category of child seat [a]	Rear seats	
		Outer seats [b]	Centre seat
0 (up to 10 kg)	E	IL	X
0+ (up to 13 kg)	E D C	IL	X
1 (9–18 kg)	D C B B1 A	IL IUF	X
2 (15–25 kg)	–	IL	X
3 (22–36 kg)	–	IL	X

[a] The size category of the child seat is indicated on the child seat plate.

[b] The seat is suitable for ISO/R3 mounting.

"IL" The seat is suitable for ISOFIX child seats with "Semi-Universal" approval.

"IUF" The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats permitted for use in this weight category.

"X" The seat is not equipped with ISOFIX system retaining rings.

i-Size

Passenger seat		Rear seats	
With activated front air-bag	Without activated front airbag	Outer seats	Centre seat
i-UF	i-U	i-U	X

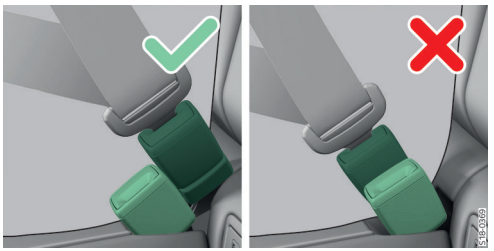
“i-UF” The seat is only suitable for forward-facing i-Size child seats in the “Universal” category.

“i-U” The seat is suitable for forward-facing and rear-facing i-Size child seats in the “Universal” category.

“X” The seat is not suitable for i-Size child seats in the “Universal” category.

Child seat fastened with a safety belt

When using a “Universal” child seat on the rear middle seat, you must move the seat belt buckle of the middle seat behind the seat belt buckle of the outer seat.



✓ Correct position – seat belt buckles are behind each other

✕ Incorrect position – seat belt buckles are next to each other

Category	Passenger seat	
	With activated front airbag	Without activated front airbag
0 (up to 10 kg)	X	U [a)]
0+ (up to 13 kg)	X	U [a)]
1 (9–18 kg)	UF	U
2 (15–25 kg)	UF	U
3 (22–36 kg)	UF	U

[a)] Adjust the height-adjustable front seat as high as possible.

Category	Rear seats	
	Outer seats	Centre seat [a)]
0 (up to 10 kg)	U	U
0+ (up to 13 kg)	U	U
1 (9–18 kg)	U	U
2 (15–25 kg)	U	U
3 (22–36 kg)	U	U

[a)] It is not permitted to install a child car seat with a support leg on the rear centre seat.

"U" The seat is suitable for child seats in the "Universal" category permitted for use in this weight group.

"UF" The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats in the "Universal" category and is permitted for use in this weight group.

"X" The seat is not suitable for children in this weight group.

Overview

Follow the instructions and notes at the beginning of this chapter ***» page 43, What you should be mindful of***.

ISOFIX

The ISOFIX system allows the child seat to be installed quickly and securely. The retaining rings for installing the child seat using the ISOFIX system are located on the outer rear seats, or on the passenger seat.

⚠ WARNING

› Do not attach any other child seats, belts or objects to the mounting eyelets used to install the child seat with the ISOFIX System provided.

ⓘ A child seat that uses the ISOFIX can only be installed in the vehicle if it is approved for this vehicle type.
Further information can be obtained from a Škoda Partner or from a list of vehicles included with the child seat.



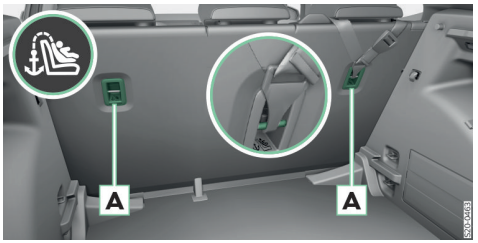
Mounting retaining rings for installing the child seat using the ISOFIX system.

TOP TETHER

⚠ WARNING

› Child seats with the TOP TETHER system can only be used on seats equipped with mounting retaining rings with the TOP TETHER symbol.
› To mount the TOP TETHER system, only rings with the TOP TETHER symbol can be used.
› Only attach 1 belt of the child seat to the TOP TETHER mounting retaining ring.
› When attaching the child seat with the TOP TETHER system, no other object can be attached to the same TOP TETHER retaining ring.

The attached TOP TETHER system strap restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.



Mounting retaining rings on the rear seats



Mounting retaining ring on the passenger seat

The TOP TETHER belt mounting retaining rings are located on the outer rear seats A, or on the passenger seat.

Airbags

Use

The airbag system offers additional occupant protection to the seat belts during severe frontal and side collisions.

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts. It only provides protection when combined with a seat belt and only in this way does it provide maximum protection.

What you should be mindful of

The airbag system can only perform its protective function if all occupants are belted and properly seated.

In some situations, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated » *page 49, Operation*.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of serious or fatal injuries!

- Maintain the correct seating position.
- Do not place your limbs in the airbag deployment area.
- No persons, animals or objects such as » *page 48* cup holders or hangers for clothes may be in the deployment area of the airbags.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of impairing the front airbags!

- Do not cover or stick anything over the steering wheel or the dash panel. This can prevent the front airbags from deploying.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of impairing the side airbags!

- Do not exert excessive force, e.g. impacts, on the backrests.
- Do not use seat covers that have not been approved by Škoda.
- Any damage to seat covers at the side airbag location must be repaired by a specialist garage.

ⓘ Škoda Auto recommends using seat covers from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

Functionality

The inflated airbag absorbs the forward movement of the body reducing the risk of injury.

ⓘ Smoke is released when the airbags inflate. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Airbag deployment in the event of an accident

Airbag deployment is influenced by many factors. The deceleration rate at the time of impact is crucial.

The airbags **will not deploy** in the following situations:

- Minor frontal and side collisions
- Rear-end collision
- Vehicle rollover

If the measured deceleration rate is below the reference values programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be deployed despite possible serious vehicle damage.

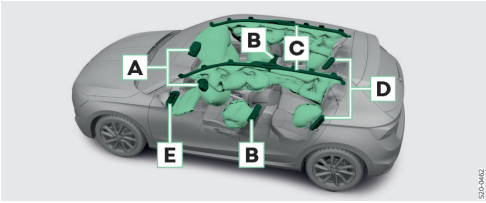
Locking the vehicle after airbag deployment

If the airbags are deployed in an accident, the whole vehicle will be unlocked at the same time. Depending on the extent of the damage, you can lock the vehicle after an accident as follows:

1. Open the driver's door and close it again.
2. Lock the vehicle.

Airbag overview

The location of airbags is marked AIRBAG.



- **A** Front airbags
- **B** Side airbags – front
- **C** Head airbags
- **D** Side airbags – rear
- **E** Driver's knee airbag

Operating conditions

✓ The ignition must be switched on to activate the airbags.

Operation

Deactivating the airbags

It is recommended that airbags other than the front passenger airbag » *page 49, Operation* should be deactivated by a Škoda Service Partner.

Deactivation of the airbags should be considered in the following cases:

› With the driver's seat correctly adjusted, a distance of at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the breastbone cannot be maintained.
› Additional operating controls for disabled drivers are installed in the vehicle.
› The vehicle has special seats, e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags.

illuminates for 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on, and then flashes for 12 seconds – airbag or belt tensioner deactivated by the diagnostic device
Message regarding the deactivated airbag or belt tensioner

⚠ WARNING

If an airbag is deactivated when the vehicle is sold, inform the buyer!

Troubleshooting

Airbag system fault

illuminated
Message indicating an airbag fault

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Passenger front airbag switch

Use

The passenger front airbag can be deactivated e.g. in the following situations:

› A child seat is fitted on the front passenger seat and the child is transported rear-facing.
› The minimum distance from the dashboard cannot be maintained.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Danger of malfunction in the passenger airbag deactivation system!

› Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off.

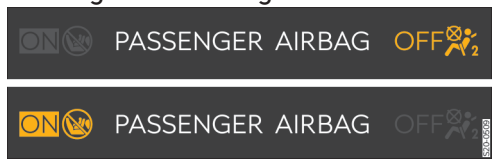
⚠ WARNING

Risk of unexpected activation of the front passenger airbag in the event of an accident!

› After deactivating the passenger airbag with the key part, do not leave the key part inserted in the switch while driving. Shocks may cause the key part to rotate in the notch and trigger the airbag.

Functionality

Passenger front airbag status indication



Indicator light in the overhead panel

› When the ignition is switched on, both indicator lights will illuminate briefly.
› If the system is OK, they will both go out.
› One of the following indicator lights will then come on depending on the position of the switch:

OFF illuminated – passenger front airbag is deactivated

ON illuminates 65 seconds after the ignition is switched on – passenger front airbag is activated

Operation

Before switching the passenger airbag off/on

Depending on the type of key:

› Tip the key part completely out.

Or:

› Remove the key part.

Switching passenger front airbag on/off



1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Open the passenger door.
3. Insert the key part upwards into the notch in the switch.
4. To **switch off**, carefully turn the switch to the **OFF** position.

   To **switch on**, carefully turn the switch to the **ON** position.
5. Remove the key part from the notch.
6. Close the passenger door.
7. Switch on the ignition and check that the passenger's front airbag indicator lights are illuminated.

Troubleshooting

Airbag system fault

ON flashes together with OFF
The passenger front airbag does not deploy in the event of an accident!

› Have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage.

Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers

Exterior lighting

Functionality

Unless otherwise stated, lights are functional when the ignition is switched on.

The light switch's default position should be **AUTO**.

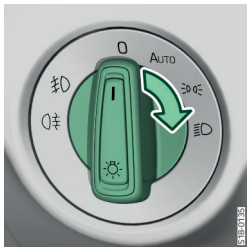
When the lights are not switched on

If the light switch is not in **AUTO** position and the system determines that the lights need to be switched on, you will be alerted by the indicator light ☼ in the instrument cluster lighting up.

☼ illuminated

› Turn on the lights.

Operation



0 All lights except daytime running lights off

AUTO Switching low beam on/off automatically » page 52

Switching on parking lights

Switching on low beam

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

Automatic switching on/off lights mode is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for correct lighting of your vehicle.

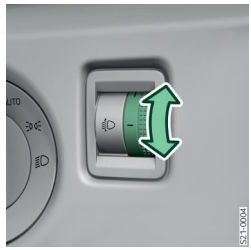
› Turn on the lights manually if the current lighting conditions require it.

Settings

Headlight range control

Applies to headlights without adaptive functions.

› Position the control based on the vehicle's current load status.



– Front seats occupied, boot empty

1 All seats occupied, boot empty

2 All seats occupied, boot loaded

3 Driver's seat occupied, boot loaded

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

Headlight range is set automatically.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

An incorrectly adjusted headlight range can result in poor road lighting or can dazzle other road users.

› Adjust the headlight range correctly.

Headlight settings for driving in countries with opposite traffic direction

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

1. Select the following menu from the Infotainment system:

   CAR > ⚙ > ☼

   Or:

   MENU > 🚗 > ⚙ > ☼

2. Activate the travel mode feature.

Applies to headlights without adaptive functions.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Troubleshooting

Defective light bulb or LED light source

illuminates together with ⚠

Information appears on the screen indicating a lighting fault.

› Replace the defective bulb.

› In case of a defective LED light source, contact a specialist garage for assistance.

The headlights are misted up on the inside

Moisture can precipitate in the interior of the headlights under certain weather conditions (cold/humid) or after washing the car. This is not a fault. Neither the performance nor the life of the headlamps is adversely affected. When driving with the lights on, the precipitated moisture will gradually evaporate.

Malfunction in the automatic headlight control

› Clean the windscreen in the area of the rain/light sensor.

Beam of light in front of the vehicle has shortened considerably

Headlight defective.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Car lighting malfunction

If a message indicating a car lighting malfunction appears, the lights will work in emergency mode.

1. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Video – Headlights

Headlights – operation

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-fabia4-headlights

Daytime running lights

Functionality

The daytime running lights illuminate the area in front of the vehicle.

For vehicles for certain markets, they also illuminate the rear vehicle area.

Operating conditions

✓ The light switch is in position **0**, **AUTO** or .

Automatic activation of lights

Functionality

Switching low beam on automatically in low light

The low beam is automatically switched on or off depending on the lighting conditions.

Switching low beam on automatically in rain

The low beam is switched on automatically when the windscreen wipers are switched on.

Automatic activation of lights is indicated by illuminating the symbol in the light switch.

Operating conditions

Switching low beam on/off automatically in low light

✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

Switching low beam on automatically in rain

✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

✓ The function is activated.

✓ The windscreen wipers have been switched on for longer than 30 seconds.

Settings

The automatic switching on headlights function is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Troubleshooting

Light sensor and rain sensor fault

 illuminated

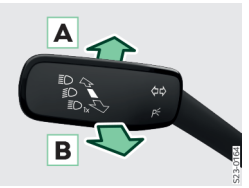
› Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.

› If the warning light does not go out, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

High beam and headlight flasher

Operation

The high beam headlights work when the headlights are switched on.



A Switching on high beam

B Switching off high beam / switching on headlight flasher

When the high beams or the headlight flasher is on, illuminates on the instrument cluster.

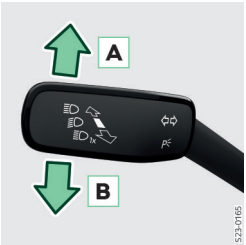
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of accident!

› Do not dazzle other road users with the high beam.

Turn signal

Operation



A Switching on right turn signal – flashes on the cluster panel

B Switching on left turn signal – flashes on the cluster panel

Turn signal – convenience turn signal

Convenience turn signal causes the turn signal lights to flash three times without having to move the lever up or down.

› Tap the control lever up or down.

The corresponding turn signal lights flash three times.

Tap the lever in the opposite direction ahead of time to stop signalling.

Settings

Activating/deactivating convenience signalling

The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > > >

Or:

MENU > > > >

Troubleshooting

Turn signal light defective

flashes faster – right turn signal light defective

› Check the right signal light

flashes faster – left turn signal light defective

› Check the left signal light

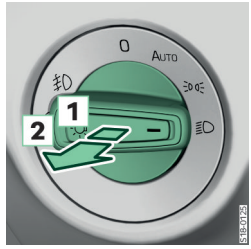
Trailer turn signal light fault

does not blink when trailer is connected – trailer indicator turn signal fault

› Check the trailer lighting.

Fog lights

Operation



Switch pull-out positions:

1 Front fog lights – when switched on, the indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates

2 Rear fog light – when switched on, the indicator light in instrument cluster illuminates

1. Turn the light switch to the position **AUTO**, or .
2. Pull the light switch to the appropriate position.

ⓘ The rear fog light does not illuminate when an accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Hazard warning lights function

Operation

› Press the button in the middle of the dashboard to switch them on/off.

The hazard warning lights may switch on automatically during hard braking. The hazard warning lights are then switched off again automatically during start-up or acceleration.

Switch on the hazard warning lights e.g. in the following situations:

› When traffic slows down suddenly or when you reach the end of a traffic queue.

› When the vehicle is stationary in traffic

› When towing

ⓘ When the hazard warning system is active and the turn signal is switched on, the hazard warning lights will be switched off temporarily and only the turn signal will flash on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Parking lights function

Use

Double parking light

The double parking light function switches on the sidelights when the vehicle is parked.

Single parking light

The single parking light function switches on the sidelights on one side when the vehicle is parked.

Operation

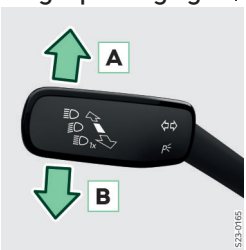
Double parking light

1. Turn on the ignition.
2. Turn the light switch to the position.
3. Switch off the ignition.
4. Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened. The warning signal stops after a few seconds or when the driver's door is closed.

The lights may switch off automatically if the 12V vehicle battery is too low. If the parking lights on both sides are switched on with the ignition off, the lights will not be switched off automatically and the 12V vehicle battery may discharge.

Single parking light



A Switch on the sidelights on the right.

B Switch on the sidelights on the left.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Move the lever to the appropriate position.
3. Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds and the driver's door is opened. The warning signal stops after a few seconds or when the driver's door is closed.

The Corner function

Functionality

The Corner function is intended for turning or manoeuvring (e.g. when parking).

The function illuminates the area in front of the vehicle depending on the direction of travel.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply.
- ✓ Low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The front fog lights are not switched on.
- ✓ The driving speed is below 40 km/h.

Headlights adaptive function

Use

It applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

The adaptive headlight function ensures that the light path is optimised to suit the current driving situation.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Engine running
- ✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position

The Coming Home, Leaving Home functions

Functionality

The Coming Home function turns on the light after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door opened. The light switches off automatically after the set lighting time has elapsed.

The Leaving Home function switches on the light when the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Visibility has worsened.
- ✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

Settings

The function is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > > >

Or:

MENU > > > >

High beam Light Assist assistant

Functionality

High beam assistant automatically switches the high beam on and off.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
- ✓ The driving speed is over 30 km/h.
- ✓ Low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



› Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

If the assistant automatically switches on the main beam, in the instrument cluster will light up.

Switching off

› Switch the high beam on or off manually.

Function restriction

The system may dazzle the drivers of other vehicles if, for example, it does not recognise their lights for the following reasons:

› The headlights of oncoming vehicles are obscured, e.g. by the barrier.

› The lights of the oncoming vehicles or the vehicle in front of you are dirty or not working.

The function of the system may be restricted in adverse weather conditions, e.g. In rain or fog.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Video – Main beam control (Light Assist)

Light Assist – activation and deactivation

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-fabia4-auto-light-assist

Replacing light bulbs

What you should be mindful of

You may replace the following light bulbs yourself. Have the remaining light sources replaced by a specialist garage.

The new bulb must have identical specifications to the original light bulb. The name of the bulb is marked on its base.

After changing a bulb in the fog light, have the headlights adjusted by a specialist garage.

NOTICE

Risk of headlight damage due to ingress of water and dirt!

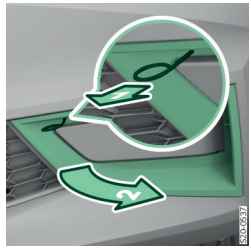
› Always fit the protective cap correctly on the headlight after changing a bulb.

Conditions for replacing a light bulb

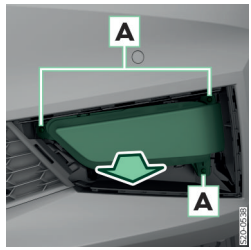
✓ Ignition off

✓ Lights off

Front fog lights

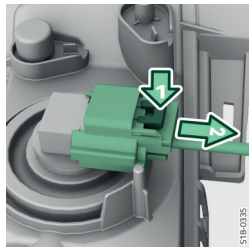


› Use the hook from the toolbox to release the cover and remove it towards the outside of the bumper.

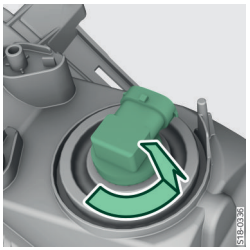


› Remove the A screws.

› Remove the lamp towards the front.

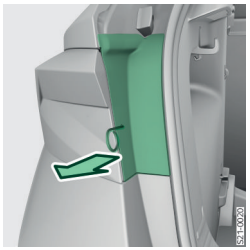


› Release the connector and remove it from the bulb.

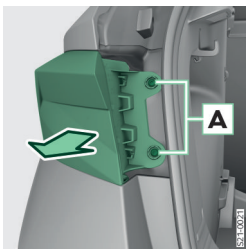


› Turn the bulb and remove it.
› Insert the new bulb in the lamp so that the guide lugs on the bulb are aligned with the corresponding openings in the lamp.
› Turn the bulb clockwise ↻ to secure.
› Insert the connector onto the new bulb until it clicks into place.
› Fit the lamp and screw it back into place.
› Replace the cover at the outer part of the bumper first.
› Press the cover towards the centre of the bumper until it clicks into place.

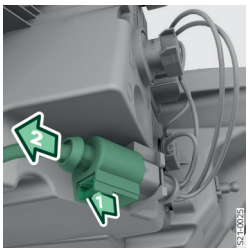
Tail light assembly



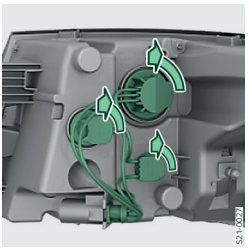
› Use a hook from the tool kit to remove the cover.



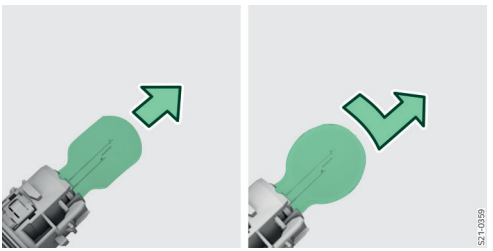
› Unscrew the A screws and remove the lamp.



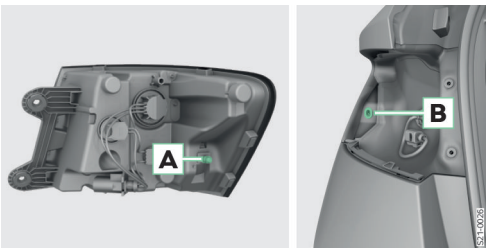
› Press the lock mechanisms on the connector and remove the connector.



› Turn and remove the base with the bulb.



› Replace the light bulb in the base.
› Insert the base with the new bulb into the lamp so that the guide lugs on the base are aligned with the corresponding openings in the lamp.
› Turn the base clockwise ↻ to secure.
› Insert the connector in the lamp until it clicks into place.



› Insert the A pin of the lamp into the B opening in the body.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system!

› Make sure that the wires between the bulb and the body are not pinched when the bulb is inserted.
› Screw the lamp into place.
› Replace the cover until it clicks into place.

Interior lighting

Operation

Automatic activation

The lighting is activated when one of the following events occurs:

› The vehicle is unlocked
› One of the doors is open
› The ignition key is removed (vehicle without starter button)

Automatic deactivation

The lighting is deactivated when one of the following events occurs:

› The vehicle is locked
› The ignition is switched on
› About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed

If a door remains open and the ignition is switched off, the lights are switched off automatically after 10 minutes.

Lighting operation

Switch centre position	Automatic activation and deactivation
	Front and rear lights on/off
OFF	Deactivating automatic switch-on
	Left reading light
	Right reading light

Settings

You can set the intensity of the backlighting for the switches and instruments when the dipped-beam or parking lights are on using one of the following ways:



1. Press the bar at the top of the screen and swipe down with your finger.

   A window will open with a slider for setting the backlight intensity.
2. Use the slider to adjust the backlight intensity.

Or:

1. Tap **MENU** > > > .
2. Use the slider to adjust the backlight intensity.

Interior background lighting

Use

The background lighting ensures a comfortable atmosphere inside the vehicle.

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

The lighting is also switched on automatically after the door is opened.

Settings

The background lighting is set in the following Infotainment system menu:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Wipers and washers

Operating conditions

Operating conditions for windscreen wipers

✓ Bonnet closed
✓ Boot lid closed
✓ Ignition on

Operating conditions for the windscreen washer system

✓ Bonnet closed
✓ Boot lid closed

Operation

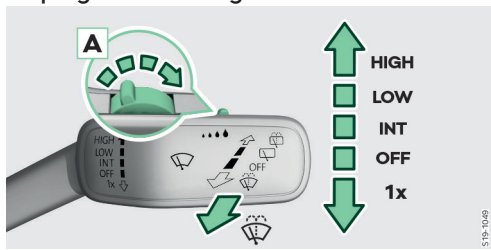
⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
At low temperatures, windscreen washer fluid can freeze on the windscreen and restrict visibility.
› Only use the windscreen washer when the windscreen is warm.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the windscreen!
› Do not switch on the wipers when the windscreen is dry.

Wiping and washing the windscreen



HIGH Fast wiping

LOW Slow wiping

INT Depending on vehicle equipment:
› Intermittent wiping
› Automatic wiping controlled by the rain sensor

OFF Switching off

1x Single windscreen wipe (sprung position)

A Setting the wiping speed for the **INT** position

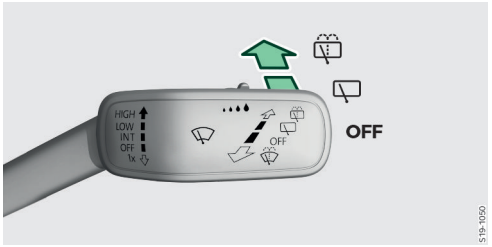
Washing and wiping (spring-loaded position)

The windscreen washer nozzles can be automatically heated, together with the wing mirrors.

Headlamps washers

The illuminated headlamps are washed the first time and every tenth time the windscreen is washed. You can have the frequency of the headlight washes adjusted by a specialist garage.

Wiping and washing the rear window



Sprung position

- Washing and wiping the glass
- Washing the rear view camera

Wiping

OFF Switching off

Convenient rear wiper function

When the windscreen wipers are switched on, the rear window is automatically wiped when the reverse gear is engaged.

Settings

Activating/deactivating automatic wiping

You can activate or deactivate the comfort automatic rear rain wiper function in the Infotainment system as follows:

CAR > > >

Or:

MENU > > > >

Refilling windscreen washer fluid

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Use windscreen washer fluid that is suitable for the climatic conditions.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the washer

› Do not remove the strainer from the neck of the tank when refilling the washer fluid.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the headlights

› Use a fluid that does not harm polycarbonate.

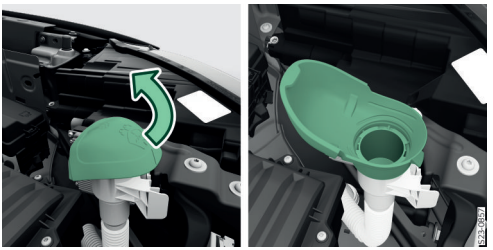
ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine compartment components

› Close the container after refilling the windscreen washer fluid.

The windscreen washer tank is in the engine compartment » page 15.

The tank capacity is 3 litres, in cars with headlight washers it is 4 litres.



Funnel cap of the reservoir

1. Open the engine compartment lid » page 157.
2. Gently open the top of the sealing cap.
3. Top up the windscreen washer fluid.
4. Close the tank sealing cap.

Troubleshooting

Washer fluid too low

illuminates together with ⚠

› Top up the windscreen washer fluid.

Wipers fault

illuminated

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Light sensor and rain sensor fault

illuminated

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Frozen windscreen wipers

› Carefully detach frozen windscreen wipers from the windscreen before switching on the ignition and remove any snow and ice.

Folding down windscreen wiper arms and replacing windscreen wiper blades

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the windscreen wipers and the engine compartment flap!

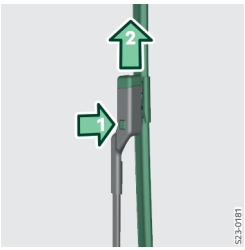
› Close the engine compartment flap before the windscreen wiper arms are folded away from the windscreen.

› Do not turn on the ignition when the windscreen wiper arms are folded away.

⚠ CAUTION

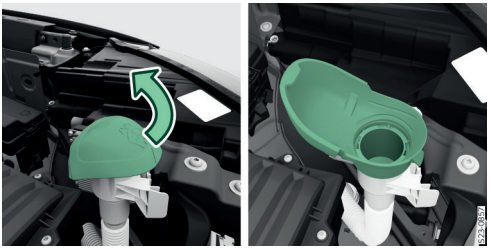
Risk of an accident!

› Change the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year.



1. Fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.
2. Press the safety catch and remove the wiper blade.
3. Insert the new wiper blade in until it clicks into place.
4. Fold the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.

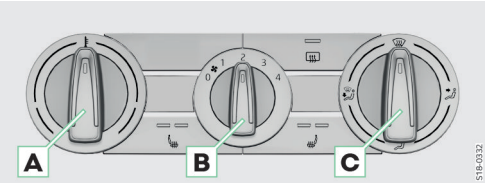
Washer fluid filler cap



Heating and air conditioning

Heating

Operation



A Setting the temperature

B Setting the fan speed

C Setting the direction of the air outlet

Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 63, Operation

Switching the seat heating on/off » page 63, Operation

⚠ WARNING

Danger of misting!

› Always keep the fan on.

Manual air conditioning

What you should be mindful of

› It is recommended to switch the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.

› It is recommended to have the air conditioner disinfected once a year.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of misting!

› Always keep the fan on.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.

› Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Fluids in the air conditioning system

The information can be found on the label in the engine compartment at the front.

⚠ Warning: air conditioning maintenance must only be carried out by qualified service technicians.

The coolant is flammable.

Air conditioning maintenance must only be carried out by qualified service technicians.

Specifications and quantity of coolant

Lubricating oil specification

⚠ DANGER

Danger to life!

The coolant is flammable and can explode when heated. It can produce poisonous gases on contact with hot surfaces.

› Have the air conditioning system serviced only by qualified service technicians trained to the required standard, e.g. SAE J2845.

› Keep the vehicle well away from sources of open flames or sparks.

Cooling system operating conditions

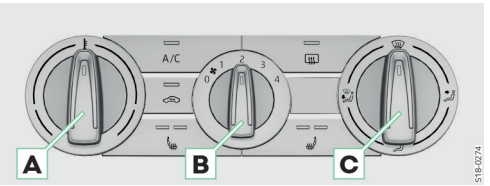
✓ Outside temperature above 2 °C

✓ Running engine

✓ Fan switched on

ⓘ Indicator light in the **A/C** button may light up, even if all the conditions for turning on the cooling are not met. The cooling system switches on when the activation conditions are met.

Operation



A Setting the temperature

B Setting the fan speed

C Setting the direction of the air outlet

A/C Switching the cooling system on/off

Switching the rear window heater on/off *» page 63, Operation*

Switching the recirculated air mode on/off

Switching the seat heating on/off *» page 63, Operation*

Cooling system

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

Automatic activation of the cooling system

Automatic activation of the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up. It turns on when the following conditions are met:

- ✓ The fan is on.
- ✓ The air distribution setting **is** in the position.

In this case, air recirculation is switched off.

Or:

- ✓ The fan is on.
- ✓ The air distribution setting **is not** in the position.
- ✓ Recirculated air mode is on.

Recirculated air mode

Recirculated air mode prevents contaminated outside air entering the vehicle.

Briefly switching on recirculated air mode can increase the cooling effect.

Recirculated air mode is automatically switched on when the following conditions are met::

- ✓ The cooling is on.
- ✓ The fan is on.
- ✓ The temperature control is set to the minimum temperature.
- ✓ The air distribution setting is not in the position.

During operation of the air conditioning system, there may be an automatic increase in the engine idle speed.

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip from the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging

› Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and turn the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic deactivation of the cooling system

In the following cases, the cooling may shut down spontaneously:

› Coolant temperature too high
› Engine load too high

The Climatronic automatic air conditioning system

What you should be mindful of

› It is recommended to use the automatic mode with a set interior temperature of 22 °C to reliably and efficiently achieve the desired conditions in the car interior.
› It is recommended to switch the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.
› Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of misting!
› Always keep the fan on.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.
› Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Fluids in the air conditioning system

The information can be found on the label in the engine compartment at the front.

⚠ Warning: air conditioning maintenance must only be carried out by qualified service technicians.

The coolant is flammable.

Air conditioning maintenance must only be carried out by qualified service technicians.

Specifications and quantity of coolant

Lubricating oil specification

⚠ DANGER

Danger to life!

The coolant is flammable and can explode when heated. It can produce poisonous gases on contact with hot surfaces.

› Have the air conditioning system serviced only by qualified service technicians trained to the required standard, e.g. SAE J2845.

› Keep the vehicle well away from sources of open flames or sparks.

Cooling system operating conditions

✓ Outside temperature above 2 °C

✓ Running engine

✓ Fan switched on

Operation



A Temperature setting for the left-hand side

B Air conditioning screen

C Temperature setting for the right-hand side

D Decreasing the fan speed

E Interior temperature sensor

F Increasing the fan speed

AUTO **Pressing** – switching automatic mode on

This function keeps the temperature constant and prevents the windows from misting.

Holding for approximately 3 seconds – maintaining the interior temperature based on the driver's temperature setting (the SYNC feature)

Switching the recirculated air mode on/off

Recirculated air mode prevents contaminated outside air entering the vehicle.

Switching the seat heating on/off » page 63, Operation

MAX Switching the windscreen ventilation/defrosting mode on/off

MENU Air conditioning control in the Infotainment system

OFF Switching the air conditioning system on/off

Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 63, Operation

ⓘ After tapping the **A/C** button in the Infotainment system, the indicator light illuminates, even if the activation conditions for the cooling system are not met. The cooling system switches on when the activation conditions are met.

If the temperature is set outside the numerical range, one of the following symbols will appear on the Infotainment screen:

LO Maximum cooling power

HI Maximum heating power

ⓘ During operation of the air conditioning system, there may be an automatic increase in the engine idle speed.

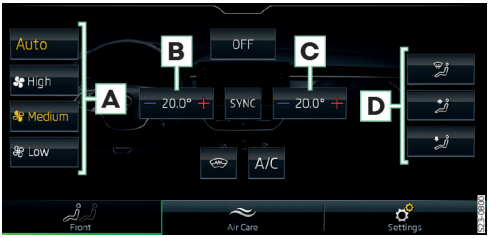
Settings

Displaying the settings menu

› Press the **MENU** button on the air conditioning control panel.

Or:

› Press **MENU** > ❄ on the Infotainment system screen.



A Airflow intensity selection in automatic mode

B Temperature setting for the left-hand side

C Temperature setting for the right-hand side

D Setting the air distribution in manual mode

A/C Switching the cooling system on/off

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

Switching the windscreen heating on/off » page 63, Operation

SYNC Switching on/off the maintenance of the interior temperature based on the driver's temperature setting

OFF Switching the air conditioning system on/off

Air Care

This function reduces the penetration of pollutants into the interior of the car. It also recirculates and cleans the air.

The progress of air cleaning is displayed on the Infotainment system screen.

Doors and windows must be closed to ensure proper operation.

› To switch on/off, press ≈ and select *Active*.

Other air conditioning settings

› Press the **MENU** button on air conditioning control panel > on the Infotainment system screen for further settings.

› *Automatic windscreen heating* – switching automatic windscreen heating on/off

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip from the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging

› Switching on automatic mode.

Or:

› Press the MAX button on the air conditioning control panel.

Or:

› Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and turn the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic deactivation of the cooling system

In the following cases, the cooling may shut down spontaneously:

› Coolant temperature too high

› Engine load too high

Windows heating

Use

Window heating is used to defrost or defog the glass.

Conditions

✓ Engine running

✓ Outside temperature is below approx. 35 °C

✓ Sufficiently charged 12V vehicle battery

Operation

Rear window heating

› Press the button on the air conditioning control panel.

Windscreen heating

› Press the **MENU** button on the Climatronic > air conditioning control panel on the Infotainment system screen.

Or:

› Press **MENU** > ❄ > on the Infotainment system screen.

Windscreen heating switches off automatically after a certain period.

If the heating is on and the engine is switched off and back on again within about 10 minutes, heating continues.

Settings

Automatic windscreen heating

The windscreen heater will automatically switch on if there is a risk of the windscreen fogging up.

› Press the **MENU** button on the Climatronic > air conditioning control panel on the Infotainment system display.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > ❄ > on the Infotainment system display.

Troubleshooting

The indicator light on or below the button flashes

Heating is not operational as the charge level of the 12V vehicle battery is too low.

Seat heating

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of burns!

› Do not switch on the seat heater for persons with limited perception of pain or temperature.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of seat damage!

› Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.

› Do not turn on the heater in the following situations:

  › The seat is not occupied.

  › There are objects on the seat, such as a child seat.

  › There are additional seat covers or protective covers on the seat.

Conditions

✓ Engine running

Operation

› Press the button or the button on the air conditioning control panel.

Heating will switch on at the maximum power level. Press the button repeatedly to reduce the heating intensity until it switches off.

The heating intensity is indicated by the number of indicator lights in the button or on the Climatronic display.

If you turn the heating on to the highest intensity, the intensity will automatically decrease after 10 minutes.

Steering wheel heating

Conditions

- ✓ Engine running
- ✓ Sufficiently charged 12V vehicle battery

Operation

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

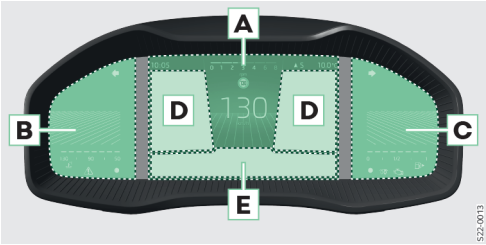
Heating will switch on at the maximum power level. Press the button repeatedly to reduce the heating intensity until it switches off.

1 By holding down the button on the multifunction steering wheel, the heating can be switched off, or switched on at the intensity that was set before the heating was switched off.

Driver information system

Digital screen

Overview



A Central screen area with selected information:
- Speed
- Time
- Indicator lights
- Reports and information
- Outside temperature

❄ – low outside temperature

B Display area with selected information:
- Coolant temperature gauge
- Indicator lights

C Display area with selected information:
- Fuel gauge
- Indicator lights

D Display area with additional information

E Display area with selected information:
- Selected gear
- Automatic gearbox selector lever positions (depending on the vehicle equipment)
- Indicator lights
- Assist systems information
- Total distance travelled
- Range

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› **Never run the fuel tank completely empty.**

› If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for its use, please contact a Škoda Partner. They can tell you whether a suitable fuel is available in that particular country.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of screen damage

› When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.

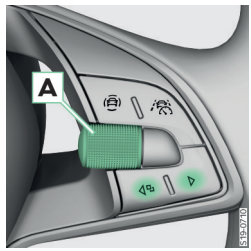
› Switch off the ignition before cleaning.

› Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.

› Do not use liquid cleaners to remove dirt.

ⓘ In poor visibility and with dipped headlights off, the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting is reduced to remind the driver to turn on the light.

Operation



A **Rotating** – switching between menu items/setting values

Pressing – confirming the menu item

▷ Switching the screen variant

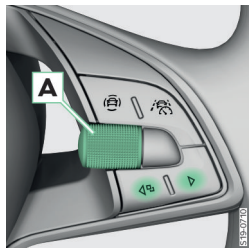
◁ Switching the screen variant

Settings

Setting the language

You can set the language in the **MENU** > Infotainment system menu.

Resetting the odometer in the instrument cluster



A **Rotating** – selecting data

Pressing – confirming data

› To reset the odometer on the right-hand side or in the middle of the screen, press the A button and then ◁.

› To reset the odometer on the left-hand side of the screen, press the A button **twice** and then ▷.

› To switch between information items, rotate the A dial.
› To confirm the information item selection, press the A dial.

Setting the time

You can also set the time in the **MENU** > Infotainment system menu.

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting

The brightness is adjusted automatically based on the given lighting conditions.

When the low dipped-beam headlights are on, you can manually adjust the intensity on the following menu of the Infotainment system:

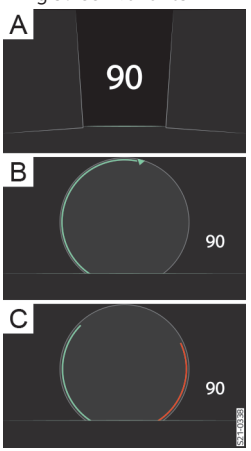
CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

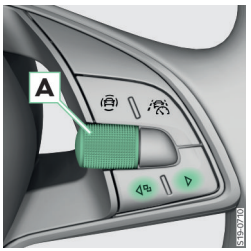
Selecting a screen variant

› Press the button repeatedly, or on the multifunction steering wheel to select one of the following screen variants.



A Digital
B Speed
C Sport (tachometer)

Displaying the menu and selecting additional information on the screen



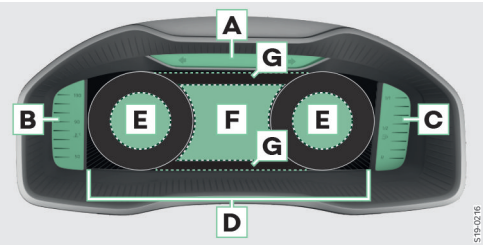
› Press the A dial to display the menu on the right-hand side or in the middle of the screen.
› To display the menu on the left-hand side of the screen, press the A dial **twice** (the second time you press it, the selection must not be on the Settings).
› To switch between information items, rotate the A dial.
› To confirm the information item selection, press the A dial.

Some information items contain a submenu.

› To display the submenu, press or .
› To switch between information items, rotate the A dial.

Virtual cockpit

Overview



A Bar with indicator lights
B Coolant temperature gauge
C Fuel gauge
D Display
E Additional information
F Central area of the screen
G Display area with selected information:
  › Selected gear
  › Automatic gearbox selector lever positions (depending on the vehicle equipment)
  › Time
  › Indicator lights
  › Assist systems information
  › Distance travelled
  › Outside temperature

  ❄ – low outside temperature

NOTICE

Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› **Never run the fuel tank completely empty.**
› If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for its use, please contact a Škoda Partner. They can tell you whether a suitable fuel is available in that particular country.

NOTICE

Risk of screen damage

› When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.

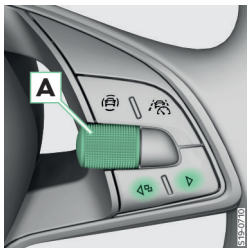
› Switch off the ignition before cleaning.
› Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.
› Do not use liquid cleaners to remove dirt.

In poor visibility and with dipped headlights off, the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting is reduced to remind the driver to turn on the light.

Overview of the main menu items on the screen

› Driving data » page 68, Overview
› Assist systems – activate/deactivate assist systems
› Navigation – displays e.g. navigation instructions, compass, list of destinations
› Audio – using radio and media
› Phone – call list, accept or reject an incoming call
› Vehicle – vehicle status » page 70, Display

Operation



A **Rotating** – switching between items / setting values / manually rescaling the map
Pressing – confirming the menu item
Rotating and pressing – turning on automatic map scaling

▷ **Pressing** – returning to the menu one level higher
Holding – displaying the main menu

◁ **Pressing** – switching the screen variant
Holding – displaying the presets menu with additional information

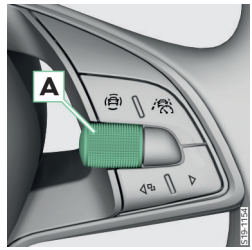
Settings

Setting the language

You can set the language in the **MENU** > Infotainment system menu.

Resetting the odometer in the instrument cluster

› Select *Trip* from the menu on the instrument cluster screen.



A **Rotating** – selecting data
Pressing – confirming data
Holding – resetting the odometer

Setting the time

You can also set the time in the **MENU** > Infotainment system menu.

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting

The brightness is adjusted automatically based on the given lighting conditions.

When the low dipped-beam headlights are on, you can manually adjust the intensity on the following menu of the Infotainment system:

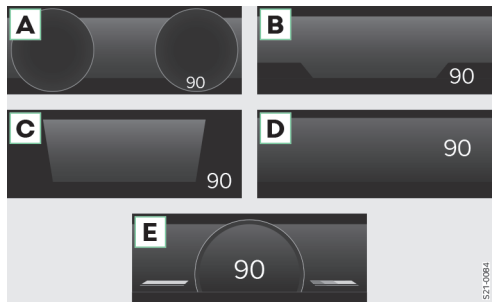
CAR > > ☼

Or:

MENU > > > ☼

Selecting a screen variant

› Press the◁ button on the multi-function steering wheel repeatedly to select one of the following screen variants.



A Classic
B Advanced
C Modern
D Basic
E Sport (depending on vehicle equipment)

Selecting from variants displayed

1. Hold the ◁ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
2. Select and confirm the screen variant.
3. Select and confirm the desired screen variant.

Selecting the additional information screen

1. Hold the ◁ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
2. Select and confirm one of the following preferences (the range of preferences depends on the type of infotainment system):
   - › **Auto** – information based on the selected driving mode
   - › **Classic**– information on the gear engaged and the current speed
   - › Setting a preset

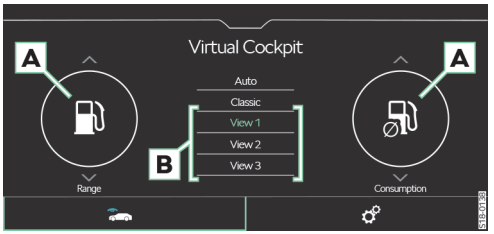
Setting a preset to display additional information

The preset for displaying additional information can be set from the following menu in the infotainment system:

CAR > 🚗 > item for virtual cockpit

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > 🚗 > item for virtual cockpit



1. Select the required additional information in A areas.
2. To save, hold down the desired preset button in B area (the range of presets depends on the type of the Infotainment system).

Video - Virtual cockpit

Virtual cockpit - operation

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-fabia4-virtual-cockpit

Driving data

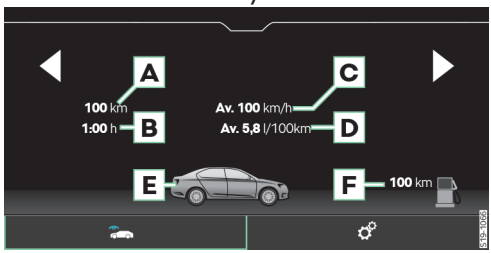
Overview

The driving data screen works when the ignition is switched on.

On the instrument cluster screen

Depending on vehicle equipment, the instrument cluster screen shows information such as speed, fuel consumption, range, etc.

In the Infotainment system



- A Distance travelled
- B Driving time
- C Average speed
- D Average fuel consumption
- E Graphical representation of fuel supply
  If the estimated range is less than 300 km, the vehicle starts approaching the ⛽ symbol.
- F Range

Memory

The system saves the driving data in the following memories:

From the start or "1" (depending on screen type)
› Driving data from the time when the ignition is switched on to when it is switched off again is stored in the memory. If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the memory will be reset.

Long term or "2" (depending on screen type)
› Driving data of all trips up to a total of 99 h and 59 min. driving time or 9,999 km driving distance is stored in the memory. If one of the listed values is exceeded, the memory is reset.

From refuelling or "3" (depending on screen type)
› Driving data from the time the fuel tank was last filled is stored in the memory. The memory is reset the next time the tank is filled.

Operation

Displaying the driving data in the instrument cluster via the control lever

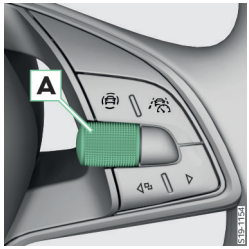
› Select Driving data from the menu on the instrument cluster screen.



- A **Pressing**: selecting data / setting values
- B **Pressing**: confirmation

Displaying the driving data in the instrument cluster via the multifunction steering wheel

› Select Driving data from the menu on the instrument cluster screen.



A **Rotating**: selecting information / setting values

Pressing: confirmation

Displaying driving data in the Infotainment system

Driving data can be displayed in the following Infotainment system menu:

CAR > > driving data

Or:

MENU > > > driving data

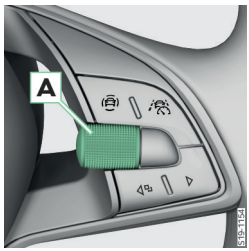
Selecting and resetting the driving data on the instrument cluster screen via the control lever



› To **select** the memory for the displayed driving data, press the A control wheel repeatedly.

› To **reset** the memory, hold the A control wheel.

Selecting and resetting the driving data on the instrument cluster screen using the multifunction steering wheel



› To **select** the memory for the displayed driving data, press the A control wheel repeatedly.

› To **reset** the memory, hold the A control wheel.

Selecting the Infotainment system memory

To select the memory, use the ◀ ▶ buttons in the following menu of the Infotainment system:

CAR > > driving data

Or:

MENU > > > driving data

Resetting the Infotainment system memory

The memory can be reset in the following menu of the Infotainment system:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Settings

Displayed driving data overview

The driving data to be displayed can be selected from the following menu of the Infotainment system:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Setting units

The units can be set in the following menu of the Infotainment system:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Speed limit warning

Use

The system allows the user to set a speed limit beyond which an acoustic warning signal will sound and the following warning message will appear on the instrument cluster display.

Settings

Setting the speed limit

› Select and confirm *Warning at* or (depending on the display type).

› **When the vehicle is stationary**, set the desired speed limit and confirm.

› **While driving**, drive at the desired speed and confirm it as the speed limit.

Resetting the speed limit

1. Select and confirm *Warning at* or (depending on the display type).
2. To reset the speed limit, confirm the stored value.

If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the set limit is deactivated, but the set value remains stored.

Vehicle status

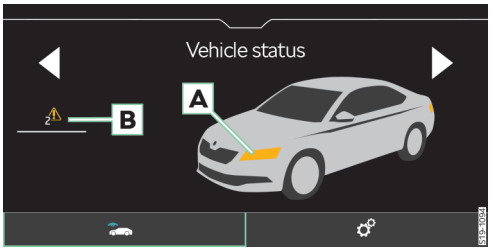
Display

The vehicle status is displayed in the following Infotainment system menu:

CAR > > vehicle status item

Or:

MENU > > > vehicle status item



A The colour-coded vehicle parts highlight the relevant warning messages

B ✓ No messages

⚠ Warning messages about the vehicles status and their number

Functionality

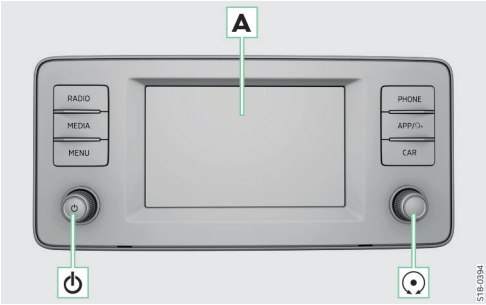
In the event of a system fault, messages indicating the fault are displayed on the instrument cluster display when the ignition is switched on.

Fault messages can also be displayed in the Infotainment system.

ⓘ The warning messages will continue to be displayed until the malfunctions have been remedied. After the first display of the message, only the indicator lights ⚠ (serious hazard) or ⚠ (warning) continue to be displayed.

7" Infotainment system

The Infotainment system overview



A Touchscreen

⏻ Left rotary control
- **Pressing:** switching the Infotainment system on/off
- **Rotating:** setting the volume

⊙ Right rotary control
- **Pressing:** confirming the menu item
- **Rotating:** selecting menu item/setting value

RADIO **Radio** menu

MEDIA **Media** menu

MENU Infotainment menus overview

PHONE **Phone** menu

APP/ **SmartLink** menu
- **Tapping:** displaying the menu
- **Holding:** switching voice control for the SmartLink application on/off

CAR Information and the vehicle settings

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of screen damage

› The Infotainment screen is operated by touching it lightly with your finger.

System

Cyber security

System updates and support

Škoda Auto keeps the systems in your vehicle up-to-date and provides full support for the time in accordance with applicable cyber security legislation.

Control centre

Usage

The Infotainment control centre provides quick access to the following functions.

› Setting the instrument and key illumination
› Setting the personal data protection level
› Functional surfaces of preferred features.

Opening the control centre



› Tap the bar at the top of the screen and drag it down.

Closing the control centre

› Tap on △.

Or:

› Press the bar at the bottom of the screen and drag up.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Settings

› To **open edit mode**, tap on an empty functional surface or press the occupied functional surface of the preferred feature.
› To **add the preferred feature**, tap on the functional surface of the desired function.
› To **remove the preferred feature**, tap on 🗑.
› To **close edit mode**, tap on ✕.

Restrictions

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Some Infotainment system functions are not available when the ignition is switched off, e.g. driving data.

Basic setting

Setting basic functions

The following basic Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** > ⚙ menu:

› Time and date
› Language
› Units
› Factory settings

Sound settings

The Infotainment system sound is set in the **MENU** > 🔊 menu.

The following settings are available in the menu:

› Equaliser
› Volume ratio
› Individual Infotainment functions volume

  The volume can be adjusted in e.g. one of the following menu items:

  › Volume adjustment of voice commands
  › Maximum volume when the Infotainment system is switched on
  › Speed-dependent volume
  › Muting the Infotainment system with the Parking Aid switched on.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following advanced sound settings are available:

› Space optimisation
› Audio profiles according to genre
› Subwoofer volume

Configuration assistant

The configuration assistant helps you set up some functions of the Infotainment system.

The configuration assistant is automatically displayed when the ignition is switched on if there are at least 2 menu items that have not been set up after the Infotainment system is switched on.

› To **switch off the automatic display** when the configuration assistant is displayed, tap *Do not show again*.
› For **manual display** tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Configuration wizard*.

Setting up the MENU menu

The layout of the buttons in the MENU can be customised as follows:

1. Press and hold the desired functional area until it is free.
2. Move the button to a different position.

Safely disconnecting the connected USB device

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the data on the connected USB device!
To disconnect a USB device safely, proceed as follows:

1. Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Remove safely*.
2. Select the desired device.
3. Disconnect the USB device.

ⓘ If it is not possible to safely disconnect the device, switch off the Infotainment and disconnect the device.

Troubleshooting

The Infotainment system not responding

If the Infotainment system does not respond, restart it as follows:

1. Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.
2. Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist garage.

By updating the system, you can ensure optimum functionality of the Infotainment system.

Determine system version

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

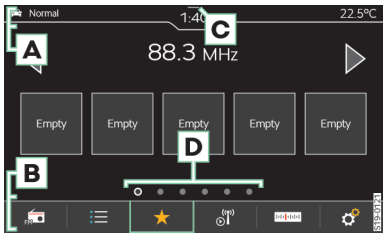
System update

1. Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information* > *Update software*.
2. Follow the instructions on the display.

ⓘ Information about the completion of the system update is displayed in the list of information messages.

Display

Overview



A Status bar
B Bar with buttons of the displayed menu

C Displaying the control centre

D Other menu pages

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of screen damage

› The Infotainment screen is operated by touching it lightly with your finger.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Swiping up or down with two fingers



› Scroll quickly through the phone contact list

Settings

The following basic screen functions can be set in the **MENU** > ⚙ > *Display* menu:

› Brightness
› Screen off
› Clock
› Confirmation tones

Infotainment keypad

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Keyboard types:

› Alphanumeric
› Numeric
› Keyboard for input
› Keyboard for search



Keypad example

A Input line

› ⌫ Deleting characters before the cursor

› **Tapping:** deleting the last character

› **Holding:** deleting all characters one after another

☰ Show list of searched entries

B Keypad keys

› ⬆ Switching to lower/upper case

› ABC/АБВ Switching to the language keypad

› 123 Switching to the numeric and character keypad

› 🌐 Displaying additional keypad languages

› ␣ Inserting a space

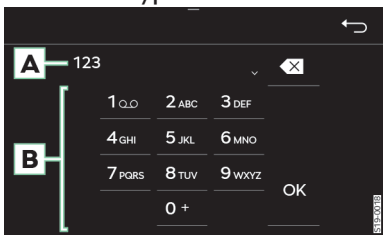
› Ä **Holding:** showing more character variants

› < Moving cursor to the left

› > Moving cursor to the right

› OK Confirming the entered characters

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line

› ⌫ Deleting characters before the cursor

› **Tapping:** deleting the last character

› **Holding:** deleting all characters

B Keypad keys

› OK Confirming the entered characters

ⓘ If the context allows, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a key with the number.

Operation

The infotainment keyboard is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keyboard will be **displayed automatically** when the infotainment prompts for characters.

Search

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display searched entries** tap ☰.

Displaying additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must first be set.

› Repeatedly tap 🌐 or the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants

1. Press and hold the A, symbol.
2. Select the desired symbol.

Setting additional keypad languages

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Additional keypad languages*.

Control centre

Overview

Displaying the control centre



› Tap the bar at the top of the screen and drag it down.

Closing the control centre

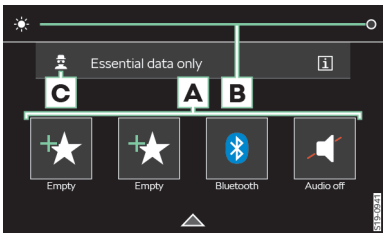
› Tap on ▲.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



A Preferred functions

B Setting the instrument and key illumination

C Setting the personal data protection level

Settings

› To **display** the edit mode, tap on the empty functional surface with the ★ icon or hold down the occupied functional surface.

› To **add** the preferred feature, tap on the functional surface of the desired function.

› To **remove** the preferred feature, tap on 🗑.

› To **close** edit mode, tap on ✕.

Radio

Overview

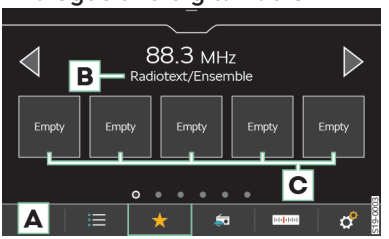
Display menu

› Tap **RADIO**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > 📻.

Analogue and digital radio



A Selecting a frequency range

B Depending on the frequency range
FM: radio text
DAB: radio text/name of the station group

C Presets for preferred stations

☰ List of available stations

★ Show favourites

📻 Show information about the station

MANU Manual search for stations (available for AM and FM frequencies)

⚙ Settings

ⓘ The Infotainment system supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

List of available stations

› Tap ☰.

⊙ Current station

★ Station stored on the preferred stations presets

TP The station broadcasts traffic information

The DAB signal is not available

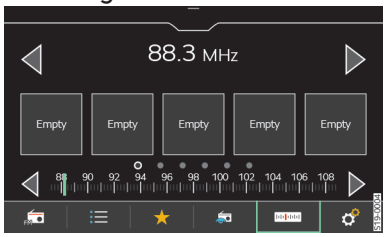
▽ Filter the stations in the list based on the programme type, e.g. culture, music, sports, etc.
FM: with activated RDS function

Manual update of the station list

The station list can display information about the program type and the type of the regional station.

Operation

Selecting a station



› Tap ◁ or ▷ at the top of the screen.

The Scan function

The function plays receivable stations from the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start playback**, tap ⚙ > *Scan* or press on the right rotary control.
› To **end playback**, tap SCAN or press on the right rotary control.

Find stations manually

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

› In the Radio main menu, tap ▭.
› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Or:

› Turn the right rotary control.

Restrictions

› The Infotainment system supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
› Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
› There are antennas in the vehicle's rear windows for receiving radio signals.

  Covering the glass with foils or metal-coated stickers can adversely affect radio signal reception.
› Škoda Auto assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu

› Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Saving a station to favourite items from the list of available stations

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

1. Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
2. Tap the desired favourite station preset.

Deleting favourites

› In the **Radio** menu, ⚙ > tap *Clear memory*.
› To delete **a** station button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** presets for preferred stations, tap *All* and confirm the deletion.

Functional areas ◁ ▷

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using the ◁ ▷ functional surfaces in the **Radio** menu can be set as follows:

1. In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Switching stations:*.
2. Select the switching option.

Switching traffic reception (TP) for FM stations on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Traffic Programme (TP)*.

Switching receiving DAB traffic program on/off

Applies to DAB frequency range.

1. In the **Radio** menu, switch on ⚙ > *Traffic program (TP)*.
2. In the **Radio** menu, switch on /off ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *DAB traffic program (TP)*.

Adding station logos

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The Infotainment system offers the option to assign logos from images on an external source to the station presets.

You can use jpg, png, bmp formats for station logos with a maximum resolution of 500x500 pixels.

1. In **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Station logos*.
2. Tap the desired preset key.
3. Select the external source with the logo.
4. Find the desired logo and confirm.

Delete station logos

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Station logos*.
› To delete **a logo**, tap the desired preset button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** logos, tap on *All* and confirm the deletion.

Enabling/disabling automatic addition of the saved station logo to favourites

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is activated, the station logo from the Infotainment system memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Automatic storage of station logos*.

Regional FM station logo

Applies to FM frequency range.

The Infotainment system offers the option to use country-specific FM stations logos.

1. In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Station logo region:*.
2. Select the country.

Turn on/off radio text reception

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and station presets are displayed, detailed information about the broadcast content of the station being listened to, or the name of the station group for the DAB station, is displayed.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Radio text*.

Switching automatic frequency change (AF) on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, the infotainment system automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Automatic frequency change (AF)*.

Automatic frequency change to a regionally linked FM station

Applies to FM frequency range.

The Infotainment system offers the option to automatically switch to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss on the FM station being listened to.

1. In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Regional RDS:*.
2. Select one of the following menu items:

› *Fix* – when the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
› *Automatic* – automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

ⓘ If signal is lost in the given region, the Infotainment system will automatically tune to another available region.

Sorting stations in the list of available stations

Applies to FM frequency range.

1. In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Sort station list:*.
2. Select station sorting in alphabetical order or by group.

Switching the RDS on/off

Applies to FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for certain countries.

› In the **Radio** menu, press ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Radio-Data-System (RDS)*.

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM stations** settings are not available:

› Traffic program (TP)
› Radio text
› Regional RDS
› Automatic frequency change (AF)
› Regional station logo
› Sorting stations in the list of available stations

Switching the programme type display on/off

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

If the function is switched on, additional information on the broadcast programme type (PTY) is displayed in the list of available stations. The programmes can be filtered based on this information.

Switching additional announcements of DAB stations on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. These include e.g. Weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Additional DAB announcements*.

Enabling/disabling automatic programme tracking of a DAB station

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the DAB station being listened to is lost, the infotainment system automatically changes to the same station with a better signal in a different DAB station group.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *DAB - DAB programme tracking*.

Turning automatic switching from a DAB station to the same FM station on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the DAB station being listened to is lost, the infotainment system automatically changes to the same FM station. The symbol (FM) is displayed after the station name.

When the corresponding DAB station can be received again, the station automatically changes from FM to DAB.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Automatic DAB – FM switching*.

Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Change to a similar station* .

Switching the Slideshow function on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, the images broadcast by the station are displayed in the player.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *DAB slideshow*.

Media

What you should be mindful of

› Do not save any important data or data which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. Škoda assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.

› Switching or connecting an audio source may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before switching or connecting an audio source.

› Information messages may appear on the source display while the audio source is being connected. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.

› The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

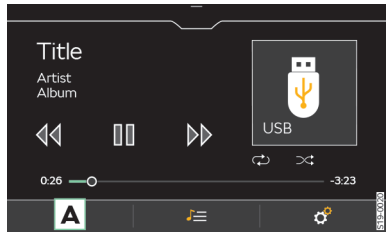
Overview

Display menu

› Tap **MEDIA**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > ♫.



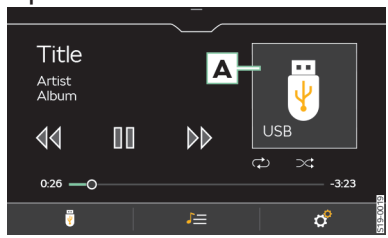
A Selecting a source

♫≡ Manage files / Multimedia database

⚙ Settings

Player controls

Operation – basics



A Album image/symbol for the connected source

▷ Starting playback

▯▯ Pausing

◁◁ Tapping within 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the previous track

◁◁ Tapping after 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the current track from the beginning

◁◁ Holding: fast rewinding within the track

▷▷ Tapping: playing the next track

▷▷ Holding: fast forwarding within the track

You can also move within the track by dragging your finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

↻1 Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track

↻ Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder

⤮ Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder

Restrictions

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used.

Settings

Turn title playback including subfolders on/off

› In the **Media** menu tap on ⚙ > *Mix/Repeat including subfolders.* .

Switch playback of online media from the Apple device on / off

› To **switching on / off** in the menu **media** ⚙ > tap *Include online media from the iPod device* .

Media in the Apple iCloud will included in the list of available media under the following conditions:

✓ The mobile device is not connected using Apple CarPlay.

✓ The mobile device is connected to the Apple iCloud.

Traffic

› To **turn on/off** traffic monitoring during playback of media files, go to the **Media** in the main menu ⚙ > and tap on *Traffic program (TP)* .

Safely disconnecting the connected USB device

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the data on the connected USB device!

To disconnect a USB device safely, proceed as follows:

1. In the **Media** menu, tap ⚙ > *Remove safely*.
2. Select the desired device.
3. Disconnect the USB device.

ⓘ If it is not possible to safely disconnect the device, switch off the Infotainment and disconnect the device.

Supported sources and files

USB

Applies to USB 1.x, 2.x , 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support.

Type	Specification	File system
MSC	USB flash disk	FAT32 exFAT NTFS
	HDD (without special software)	
	USB device supporting USB Mass Storage protocol	
MTP	Devices with the Android operating system supporting Media Transfer Protocol	
Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system	HFS+

ⓘ Apple protocol iAP1 is not supported by the Infotainment system.

Bluetooth® audio player

The Infotainment system supports Bluetooth® A2DP and AVRCP (1.0–1.6) protocols.

Compatibility of mobile devices

Visit the Škoda website to check whether the Infotainment system and the selected mobile device being tested are compatible, or do it by scanning the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All stated information is approximate and for your information only.

Škoda Auto cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software updates of the Infotainment system and mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3
MPEG 2 Layer 3	
MPEG 2.5 Layer 3	
Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	wma
Windows Media Audio 9.2	
Windows Media Audio 10	
AAC LC	aac
AAC-HE	
AAC-HEv2	
FLAC	flac
RIFF	wav
SBC	-

Files protected by DRM and iTunes® are not supported by the Infotainment system.

Supported playlists

File format	File extension
M3U	m3u
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx
PLA	pls

Mobile devices management

Overview

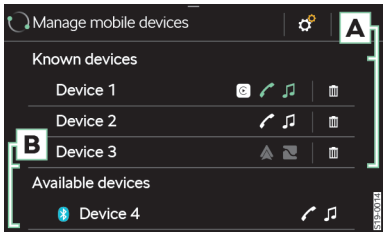
Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Displaying mobile device management

› Tap **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone.*

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > SmartLink > ⚙ > *Mobile devices.*



- **A** Connected/previously connected devices
- **B** Available devices
- The device enables connection via Bluetooth® “hands free” profile
- The connected via Bluetooth® “hands free” profile
- The device enables connection viaBluetooth® audio profile
- The device is connected viaBluetooth® audio profile
- The device enables SmartLink connection via Android Auto
- The device enables SmartLink connection via Apple CarPlay
- The device enables SmartLink connection via MirrorLink
- Removing the device from the list of **previously connected devices**

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

Visit the Škoda website to check whether the Infotainment system and the selected mobile device being tested are compatible, or do it by scanning the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All stated information is approximate and for your information only.

Škoda Auto cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software updates of the Infotainment system and mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, absolute Bluetooth® compatibility with the Infotainment system cannot be guaranteed. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version on the Bluetooth® protocols implementation by the mobile device producer.

Applications in mobile devices

You can install applications on your mobile devices that allow you to show additional information on the Infotainment system display or to control the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work on all mobile devices, and Škoda Auto assumes no responsibility for their operation.

The range of available applications and their functionality depends on the type of the Infotainment system, type of vehicle and the region.

Information about Škoda applications

For detailed information about Škoda applications, please visit the website by scanning this QR code or following the link:

https://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connecting a mobile device to the Infotainment system

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.

Find the name of the unit in the **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > menu under *Name:*.

3. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non-paired mobile device

1. Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
2. Tap **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone* > 📱.
3. Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
4. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If 2 devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously connected mobile device

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

1. Tap **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone*.
2. Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.

   The selected device can be connected via the most recently used Bluetooth® profile.
3. If 2 devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection

The Infotainment system allows you to establish a SmartLink connection with a compatible mobile device using the following connections:

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment system via USB cable or WLAN, as long as the mobile device supports .

1. Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment system using a USBcable, or browse and connect it via WLAN.
2. Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Phone

Overview

Displaying menu

› Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > ✓.

If the **Phone** menu is not displayed, check whether the phone is connected.



A Name of the connected phone:
› **Tapping:** displaying the list of previously connected phones

B Name of the phone service provider

C Presets for preferred contacts

Swapping the main and additional phone

Entering phone number

Contact list

Call lists

Switching on voice control of the connected phone

Settings

Conditions for connecting a phone to the Infotainment system

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Visibility:*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.

✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Phone operation

Entering phone number

1. In the **Phone** menu, tap ⠿.
2. Enter the phone number using the displayed numeric keypad.

ⓘ The displayed numeric keypad can also be used to search for contacts.
For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter combination DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numerical keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **phone** menu, tap on .

› To **find** details within the list, tap *Find*.

› Enter the details you wish to find.

› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

› To display the **details** for a contact, tap >.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on > .

Phone conversation

Depending on the context of the phone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

- Ending dialling / Rejecting incoming call / Ending call
- Answering an incoming call / Returning to the held call
- Switching the ringer off
- Switching the ringer on
- Holding a call
- Switching the microphone off
- Switching the microphone on
- Displaying caller details
- Answering a call from the second phone during a call on the first phone
  The ongoing call on the first phone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the call from the speakers to the phone,** go to the **Phone** menu and tap on > *Handsfree*.

› To **switch the call from the phone to the speakers,** tap .

Conference call

A conference call is a joint phone conversation with a minimum of 3 and a maximum of 6 participants.

› Make another call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

Or:

› Tap to answer a new incoming call.

› To **start** a conference call, tap .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected, depending on the context:

- Hold the conference call and leave temporarily
  The conference call continues in the background
- Return to the held conference call
- Switching the microphone off
- Switching the microphone on
- End conference call
- Show details of the conference call

The following functions can be selected from the conference call details, depending on the connected phone:

- End conversation with the conference call participant
- Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Settings for the Infotainment system phone functions

Phone – Infotainment connection types

The way in which the phone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment system.

› The main phone – if no phone is connected.

› Additional phone – if 1 phone is connected.

› Select which phone to replace – if 2 phones are connected.

› To switch between the main phone and the additional phone, tap **Phone** in the phone menu.

Phone - Infotainment connection

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.

   Find the name of the unit in the **MENU** > > *Bluetooth* > menu under *Name:*.
3. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

Connecting the Infotainment system to an unpaired phone

1. Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
2. Tap **PHONE** > > *Select mobile phone* > .
3. Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
4. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If 2 devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously paired phone

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

1. Tap **PHONE** > > *Select mobile phone*.

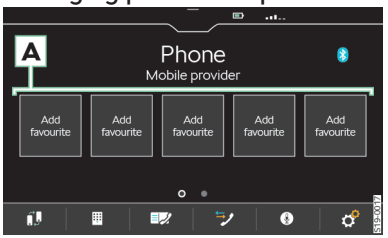
2. Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.

   The phone will be connected as an additional phone.

Or:

› If 2 phones are connected to the Infotainment system, select the phone to be replaced.

Managing presets for preferred contacts



› To **save** the desired preset key, hold it in A.

› Select the contact from the list.

› If the contact contains multiple phone numbers, select the phone number you require.

› To **display the menu for deletion,** go to **Phone** menu and press ⚙ > *User profile* > *Manage favourites*.

› To delete **one** preset preferred contact, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all** preset preferred contacts, tap *All* and confirm the deletion.

Importing telephone contacts

Once the main phone has been connected to the Infotainment system, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

The Infotainment system can import up to 2000 phone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can contain up to 5 phone numbers.

Depending on the type of phone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For a **manual** update of the list in the **Telephone** menu, tap ⚙ > *User profile* > *Import contacts*.

Sort contacts in the phone book

› In the **Telephone** menu, tap ⚙ > *User profile* > *Sort by:* and select the sort type.

Ringtone

Some phones do not allow the use of the phone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment system ringtone is used.

1. To set the Infotainment system ringtone, tap in the **Phone** menu ⚙ > *User profile* > *Select ringtone*.
2. Select the ringtone.

Voice mailbox number

1. To set the voice mailbox number, tap in the **Phone** menu ⚙ > *User profile* > *Voice mailbox number:*.
2. Enter the voice mailbox number.

Wi-Fi

Functionality

WLAN can be used for SmartLink connection.

The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 4 mobile devices.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi hotspot* > *Connected devices*.

🛈 If the menu does not contain **MENU** > ⚙ the item *WLAN*, the Infotainment system does not support this function.

Restrictions

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

🛈 Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connecting a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

1. Switch on the Infotainment Wi-Fi hotspot under **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN* > *WLAN hotspot*.
2. Switch on Wi-Fi in the mobile device.
3. Find the Infotainment WLAN from the list of available WLAN devices.

   You can find the Infotainment system name under **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN hotspot* > *Network name:*.
4. Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the password.

   The password to connect to the Infotainment hotspot can be found under **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN hotspot* > *Network key*.
5. Confirm the connection.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Changing the password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot

The password must have at least 8 and up to 63 characters.

1. Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *WLAN hotspot* > *Network key*.
2. Enter and confirm the password.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or WiFi.

Supported connection types

SmartLink supports the following connection types:

› Android Auto
› Apple CarPlay
› MirrorLink

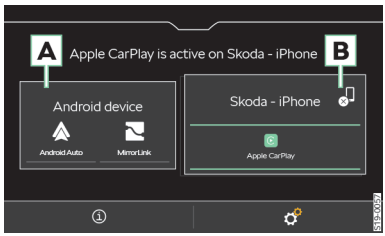
Overview of SmartLink connection

SmartLink menu

› Tap on **APP/**.

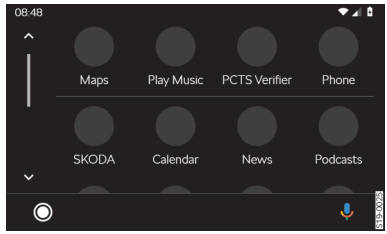
Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > SmartLink.



A Previously connected device
B Currently connected device
ⓘ Displaying SmartLink information
Termination of the active connection
⚙ Setting up the SmartLink menu

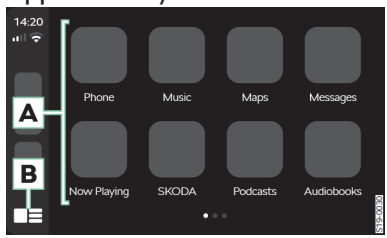
Android Auto



◉ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.
Switching on voice control (Google Assistant)

ⓘ The appearance of the Android Auto screen may vary depending on your phone's system version.

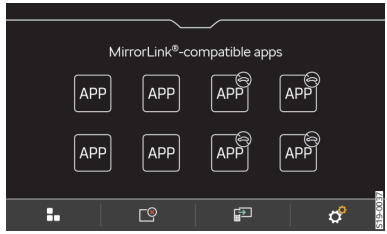
Apple CarPlay



A List of available applications
B Depending on the length of operation:
  › **Pressing:** returning to the Apple CarPlay menu
  › **Holding:** turning on Siri voice control

ⓘ The appearance of the Apple CarPlay screen may vary depending on your phone's system version.

MirrorLink



It is not possible to operate the application while driving.
Returning to the SmartLink menu
List of running applications
Display of the last running application in connected mobile device.
⚙ Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

- ✓ The mobile device supports the SmartLink connectivity Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.
- ✓ The mobile device, as well as the type of SmartLink connectivity, are supported in the relevant market.
- ✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.
- ✓ The Wi-Fi connection must be supported by the Infotainment system Wi-Fi function.

Conditions for Android Auto

- ✓ The device to be connected supports Android Auto connectivity.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Android Auto connectivity can be found on the Google, Inc website.
- ✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection on the mobile device to be turned on.
- ✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time when the vehicle is stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the Apple CarPlayconnection.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc.
- ✓ Siri voice control is on.
- ✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Conditions for MirrorLink

- ✓ The device to be connected supports MirrorLink connectivity.

  A list of devices and applications that support the MirrorLink connectivity can be found on the Car Connectivity Consortium® website.
- ✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

- Display of control surfaces at the bottom
- Display of control surfaces at the top
- Return to the menu MirrorLink

Restrictions

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay – USB connection

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. Select the connection via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – connecting via WLAN from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the mobile device.
2. Tap **MENU** > SmartLink > > *Mobile devices* in the Infotainment system.
3. Look for the desired device with the symbol in the displayed list, and select it.
4. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
5. If another device is connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay – connecting via WLAN from a mobile device

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
- ✓ The WLAN and Bluetooth® is switched on in the Infotainment system.

1. Switch on CarPlay in the mobile device.
2. Hold the button on the multi-function steering wheel.

   The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® device.
3. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
4. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.
5. If necessary, confirm the PIN.

6. Select the type of Apple CarPlay connection on the Infotainment system screen.

Apple CarPlay - terminating the connection

1. Tap “Skoda” in the Apple CarPlay Infotainment system menu.
2. Tap .

Android Auto – USB connection

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

✓ The minimum Android version is 6.

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. Select the connection via Android Auto.

Android Auto – connecting via WLAN from the Infotainment system

1. Tap **MENU** > > > *Mobile devices* in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
3. Select the Bluetooth® handsfree profile.
4. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
5. If another device is connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.
6. In the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the symbol.

Android Auto – connecting via WLAN from a mobile device

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

✓ The WLAN and Bluetooth® is switched on in the Infotainment system.

✓ The minimum Android version is 11.

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.
3. If necessary, confirm the PIN.
4. Select the type of Android Auto connection on the Infotainment system screen.

Android Auto - terminating the connection

1. Tap > “Skoda” in the Android Auto menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap .

MirrorLink – USB connection

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. Select the connection via MirrorLink.

MirrorLink – connecting via WLAN from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on WLAN and visibility in the mobile device.
2. Switch on the Infotainment Wi-Fi hotspot under **MENU** > > *WLAN* > *WLAN hotspot*.
3. Find the Infotainment WLAN from the list of available WLAN devices.
4. Enter the required password.
5. On some mobile devices, you need to confirm in the notification bar of the mobile device that the device is communicating with the Infotainment system.
6. Tap **MENU** > > > *Mobile devices*.
7. Select from the list of **known devices** the desired device with the symbol .

MirrorLink - terminating the connection

1. Tap in MirrorLink menu.
2. Tap ⊗.

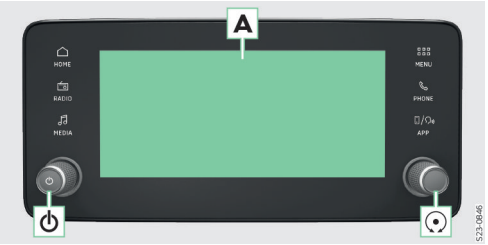
Switching to another device/type of connection

The Infotainment system allows you to switch between the currently connected devices or connection type.

1. Tap **MENU** > .
2. Select the desired device or connection type.

8" Infotainment system

The Infotainment system overview



A Touchscreen

⏻ Left rotary control
- **Pressing:** switching the Infotainment system on/off
- **Rotating:** setting the volume

⊙ Right rotary control
- **Pressing:** confirming the menu item
- **Rotating:** selecting menu item/setting value

HOME Favourites

RADIO **Radio** menu

MEDIA **Media** menu

MENU Infotainment menus overview

PHONE **Phone** menu

APP **SmartLink** menu
- **Tapping:** displaying the menu
- **Holding:** switching voice control for the SmartLink application on/off

System

Restrictions

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Some Infotainment system functions are not available when the ignition is switched off, e.g. driving data.

Basic setting

Setting basic functions

The following basic Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** > ⚙ menu:

- Time and date
- Language
- Units
- Factory settings

Sound settings

The Infotainment system sound is set in the **MENU** > 🔊 menu.

The following settings are available in the menu:

- Equaliser
- Volume ratio
- Individual Infotainment functions volume

  The volume can be adjusted in e.g. one of the following menu items:
  - Volume adjustment of voice commands
  - Maximum volume when the Infotainment system is switched on
  - Speed-dependent volume
  - Muting the Infotainment system with the Parking Aid switched on.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following advanced sound settings are available:

- Space optimisation
- Audio profiles according to genre
- Subwoofer volume

Configuration assistant

The configuration assistant helps you set up some functions of the Infotainment system.

The configuration assistant is automatically displayed when the ignition is switched on if there are at least 2 menu items that have not been set up after the Infotainment system is switched on.

- To **switch off the automatic display** when the configuration assistant is displayed, tap *Do not show again*.
- For **manual display** tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Configuration wizard*.

Setting up the HOME menu

To **display another page** of the HOME menu:

› Tap **HOME** again.

Or:

› Press the display with two fingers and drag left or right.

To **add a favourite menu**, do the following:

1. Tap the blank function area.

   If the desired button is occupied, first remove the menu from the button.
2. Select the menu with the desired dimension of the function area.
3. Tap ✕ to exit the edit mode.

To **add a favourite menu**, do the following:

1. Hold the corresponding button.
2. Tap 🗑.
3. Tap ✕ to exit the edit mode.

Setting up the MENU menu

The layout of the buttons in the MENU can be customised as follows:

1. Press and hold the desired functional area until it is free.
2. Move the button to a different position.

Troubleshooting

The Infotainment system not responding

If the Infotainment system does not respond, restart it as follows:

1. Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.
2. Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist garage.

By updating the system, you can ensure optimum functionality of the Infotainment system.

Determine system version

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

System update

1. Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information* > *Update software*.
2. Follow the instructions on the display.

ⓘ Information about the completion of the system update is displayed in the list of information messages.

Display

Overview



- **A** Status bar
- **B** Bar with buttons of the displayed menu
- **C** Displaying the control centre
- **D** Other menu pages

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

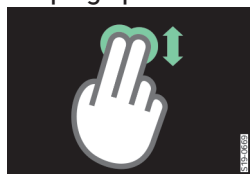
Risk of screen damage

› The Infotainment screen is operated by touching it lightly with your finger.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

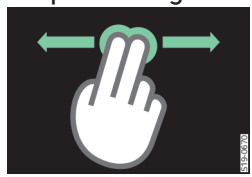
The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Swiping up or down with two fingers



› Scroll quickly through the phone contact list

Swipe two fingers left or right



› Displaying the next page in the HOME menu

Settings

The following basic screen functions can be set in the **MENU** > ⚙ > *Display* menu:

› Brightness
› Screen off
› Clock
› Confirmation tones

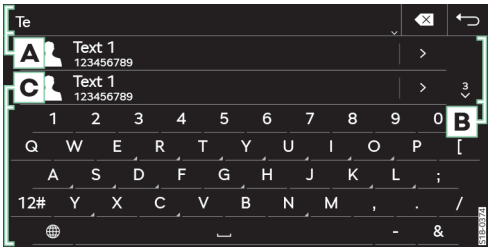
Keypad

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Keyboard types:

› Alphanumeric
› Numeric
› Keyboard for input
› Keyboard for search



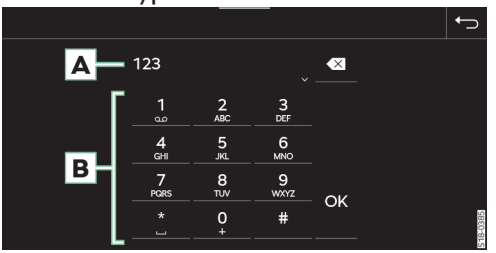
Keypad example

A Input line
› Deleting characters before the cursor
› **Tapping:** deleting the last character
› **Holding:** deleting all characters one after another
› Displaying keys for moving the cursor in the input line
› Moving cursor to the left
› Moving cursor to the right

B Retrieved entries
› Displaying the list

C Keypad keys
› Switching to lower case letters
› Switching to upper case letters
› **ABC/АБВ** Switching to the language keypad
› **12#** Switching to the numeric and character keypad
› **1/2/2/2** Switching to other character variants
› Displaying additional keypad languages
› Inserting a space
› **Holding:** showing more character variants
› OK Confirming the entered characters

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line
› Deleting characters before the cursor
› **Tapping:** deleting the last character
› **Holding:** deleting all characters

B Keypad keys

› OK Confirming the entered characters

If the context allows, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a key with the number.

Operation

The infotainment keyboard is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keyboard will be **displayed automatically** when the infotainment prompts for characters.

Search

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

You can enter search terms including diacritical characters.

› To **show the retrieved entries**, press .

Displaying additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must first be set.

› Repeatedly tap until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants

1. Press and hold the symbol.
2. Select the desired symbol.

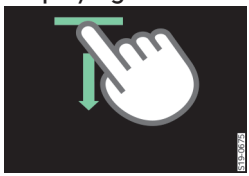
Setting additional keypad languages

› Tap **MENU** > > *Additional keypad languages*.

Control centre

Overview

Displaying the control centre



› Tap the bar at the top of the screen and drag it down.

Closing the control centre

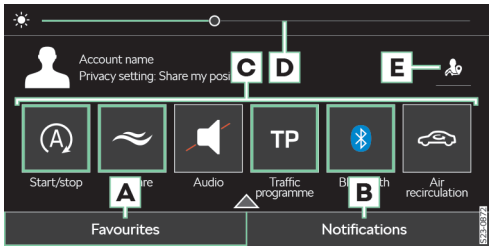
› Tap on ▲.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



- **A** Displaying and managing buttons for preferred functions
- **B** Displaying a list of information messages
- **C** Preferred functions
- **D** Setting the instrument and key illumination
- **E** Setting the personal data protection level

Setting buttons of preferred functions

› To **display** editing mode, hold any functional area for the preferred feature.

› To **add** the preferred feature, hold the button and move the desired function from the top of the screen to the button at the bottom of the display.

› To **close** the edit mode, press ✕.

Radio

Overview

Display menu

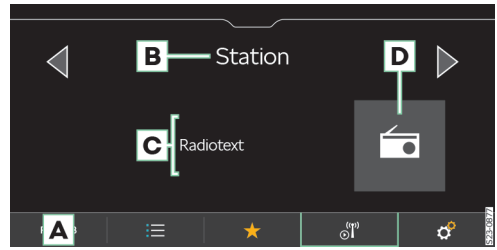
› Tap **RADIO**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > .

Analog and digital radio player

1. Tap **A** and select the desired frequency band.
2. Tap ⁝≡ and search for or select the desired station.
3. Tap ⮌.
4. Tap .



- **A** Selecting a source
- **B** Station name
- **C** Broadcast content information
- **D** Station logo
- ⁝≡ List of available stations
- ★ Show favourites
- Station information
- Manual search for stations (available for AM and FM frequencies)
- Settings

List of available analog and digital radio stations

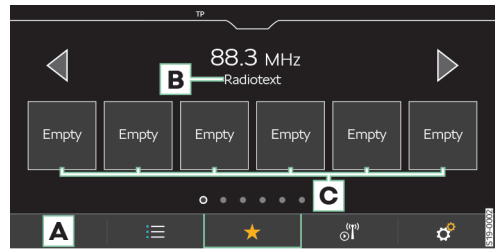
› Tap ⁝≡.

- Current station
- ★ Station stored on the preferred stations presets
- The DAB station broadcasts images displayed in the station information.
- Manual update of the station list

The station list can display information about the program type and identification of the regional station.

List of preferred stations

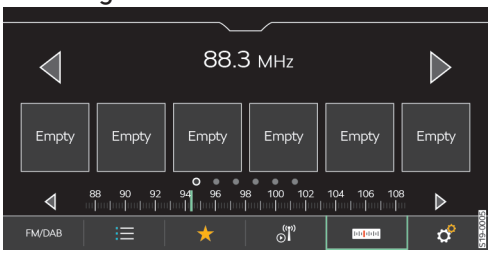
› Tap ★ in the Radio menu.



A Selecting a source
B Radio text
C Presets for preferred stations

Operation

Selecting a station



› Tap ◁ or ▷ at the top of the screen.

The Scan function

The function plays receivable stations from the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start playback**, tap ⚙ › *Scan*.
› To **stop playback**, tap SCAN.

Finding stations manually

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

› Tap MANUAL in the Radio menu.

For FM stations, the MANUAL button is available only if the *FM* option is selected in the Radio menu band selection ☰ › ▾.

› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Restrictions

› The Infotainment system supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
› Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
› There are antennas in the vehicle's rear windows for receiving radio signals.

  Covering the glass with foils or metal-coated stickers can adversely affect radio signal reception.
› Škoda Auto assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu

› Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Saving a station to favourite items from the list of available stations

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

1. Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
2. Tap the desired favourite station preset.

Deleting favourites

› In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ › *Delete an item from memory*.
› To delete **one** preferred station preset, tap the required preset and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** preferred stations keys, tap *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

◁ ▷ buttons for analogue and digital radios

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using the ◁ ▷ functional surfaces in the **Radio** menu can be set as follows:

1. In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ › *Switching stations:*.
2. Select the option to switch between stations stored in your preferred presets or stations in the list of available stations.

Switch on/switch off traffic reception (TP) for stations

Applies to FM and DAB frequency range.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ › *Traffic program (TP)* .

Assigning a station logo from the Infotainment system memory

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The Infotainment system allows you to assign logos stored in its memory to stations.

1. In **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ › *Station logos*.
2. Select the preferred station and logo.

Switching off the station logo display

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

1. In **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ › *Station logos*.
2. Select the preferred station and press *No logo*.

Activating / deactivating automatic station logo assignment

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Automatic selection of station logos* .

Turn on/off radio text reception

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and the station buttons are displayed, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Radio text* .

Switching the function on/off Slideshow

Applies to DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, the images broadcast by the station are displayed in the player.

› Press the displayed radio text in the **Radio** player.

Regional FM station logo

Applies to FM frequency range.

The Infotainment system offers the option to use country-specific FM stations logos.

1. In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Station logo region:*.
2. Select the country.

Switching additional announcements of the DAB station on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. These include e.g. Weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Additional DAB announcements* .

Switching the RDS on/off

Applies to FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for certain countries.

› In the **Radio** menu, press ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Radio-Data-System (RDS)*.

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM stations** settings are not available:

› Traffic program (TP)
› Radio text
› Regional RDS
› Automatic frequency change (AF)
› Regional station logo

Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Switch to a similar station if weak reception* .

Media

What you should be mindful of

› Do not save any important data or data which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. Škoda assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
› Switching or connecting an audio source may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before switching or connecting an audio source.
› Information messages may appear on the source display while the audio source is being connected. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
› The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

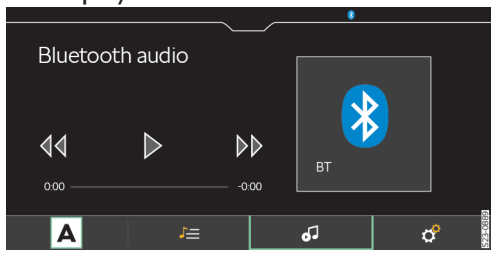
Display menu

› Tap **MEDIA**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > ♫.

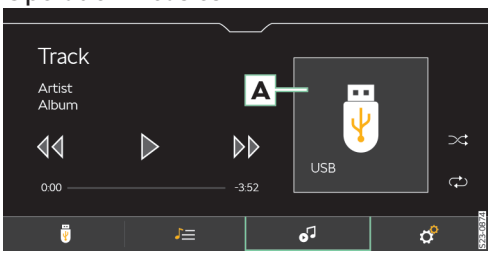
Audio player



A Selecting a source
Manage files / Multimedia database
Details about the title being played
⚙ Settings

Player controls

Operation – basics



A Album image/symbol for the connected source
› Overview of available albums

▷ Starting playback

▯▯ Pausing

◁◁ Tapping within 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the previous track

◁◁ Tapping after 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the current track from the beginning

◁◁ Holding: fast rewinding within the track

▷▷ Tapping: playing the next track

▷▷ Holding: fast forwarding within the track

You can also move within the track by dragging your finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

Turn on/off repeat playback of the current track

Turn on/off repeat playback of the current album/folder

Turn on/off random playback of the current album/folder

Restrictions

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used.

Settings

Traffic

› To **turn on/off** traffic monitoring during playback of media files, go to the **Media** in the main menu > and tap on *Traffic program (TP)* .

Supported sources and files

USB

Applies to USB 1.x, 2.x , 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support.

Type	Specification	File system
MSC	USB flash disk	VFAT FAT16
	HDD	
	(without special software)	FAT32 exFAT NTFS
	USB device supporting USB Mass Storage protocol	
MTP	Devices with the Android operating system supporting Media Transfer Protocol	
Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system and the iAP2 protocol	HFS+

Apple protocol iAP1 is not supported by the Infotainment system.

Bluetooth® audio player

The Infotainment system supports Bluetooth® A2DP and AVRCP (1.0–1.6) protocols.

Compatibility of mobile devices

Visit the Škoda website to check whether the Infotainment system and the selected mobile device being tested are compatible, or do it by scanning the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All stated information is approximate and for your information only.

Škoda Auto cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software updates of the Infotainment system and mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1 Layer 2	mp2
MPEG 2 Layer 2	
MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3
MPEG 2 Layer 3	
MPEG 2.5 Layer 3	

Codec type	File extension
Windows Media Audio 7	wma
Windows Media Audio 8	
Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	
Windows Media Audio 9.2	
Windows Media Audio 10	
AAC LC	aac m4a
AAC-HE	
AAC-HEv2	
ALAC	m4a
OGG-Vorbis	ogg
FLAC	flac
PCM	wav
RIFF	
SBC	-
Monkey's	ape
OPUS	OPUS

Files protected by DRM and iTunes® are not supported by the Infotainment system.

Supported playlists

File format	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

Mobile devices management

Cyber security

Your vehicle contains components that exchange information and data between the vehicle and connected mobile devices or the internet.

These components are equipped with security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle's systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and functions. However, observe the following guidelines:

› Use only data carriers, Bluetooth® and mobile devices that do not contain any malicious data or software.

› Regularly update the software provided by Škoda Auto.

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

Malicious software in the vehicle can affect or deactivate certain vehicle functions or take control of them.

› If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, reduce speed or stop the vehicle immediately.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

Malicious software in the vehicle can gain unauthorised access to vehicle information and data or connected mobile devices.

Overview

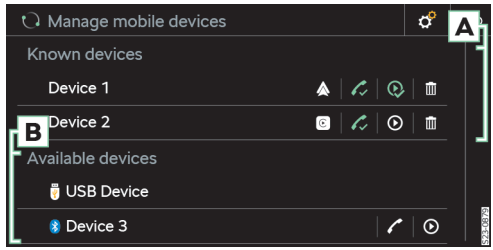
Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Displaying mobile device management

› Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices*.

Or:

› Tap ⚙ > *Select mobile phone* in the Phone menu.



A Connected/previously paired devices

B Available devices

The device enables connection via Bluetooth® “hands free” profile

The connected via Bluetooth® “hands free” profile

The device enables connection via Bluetooth® audio profile

The device is connected via Bluetooth® audio profile

Removing the device from the list of **previously connected devices**

The device enables SmartLink connection via Android Auto

The device enables SmartLink connection via Apple CarPlay

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

Visit the Škoda website to check whether the Infotainment system and the selected mobile device being tested are compatible, or do it by scanning the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All stated information is approximate and for your information only.

Škoda Auto cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software updates of the Infotainment system and mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, absolute Bluetooth® compatibility with the Infotainment system cannot be guaranteed. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version on the Bluetooth® protocols implementation by the mobile device producer.

Applications in mobile devices

You can install applications on your mobile devices that allow you to show additional information on the Infotainment system display or to control the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work on all mobile devices, and Škoda Auto assumes no responsibility for their operation.

The range of available applications and their functionality depends on the type of the Infotainment system, type of vehicle and the region.

Information about Škoda applications

For detailed information about Škoda applications, please visit the website by scanning this QR code or following the link:

https://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connecting a mobile device to the Infotainment system

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.

   To find out the name of the unit, press **MENU** > > *Manage mobile device* > > *Device name:*.
3. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non-paired mobile device

1. Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
2. Press **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices*.

   Or:

   Tap > *Select mobile phone* in the Phone menu.
3. Select the desired device from the list of available devices.
4. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If 2 devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously connected mobile device

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

1. Press **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices*.

   Or:

   Tap > *Select mobile phone* in the Phone menu.
2. Select the desired device from the list of already paired devices.
3. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
4. If 2 devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection

The Infotainment system allows you to establish a SmartLink connection with a compatible mobile device using the following connections:

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment system via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as it is supported by the mobile device.

1. Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment system using a USBcable, or browse and connect it via Wi-Fi.
2. Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Phone

Overview

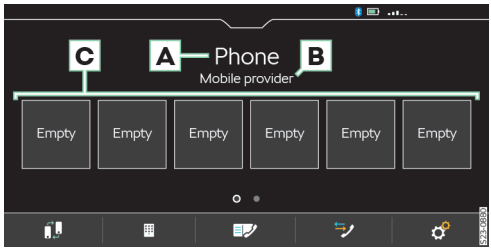
Displaying menu

› Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > .

If the **Phone** menu is not displayed, check whether the phone is connected.



A Name of the connected phone:
› **Pressing:** displaying mobile devices management

B Name of the phone service provider
› If the name is preceded by the displayed ▷ symbol, roaming is active.

C Presets for preferred contacts

Swapping the main and additional phone

Entering phone number

Contact list

Call lists

Settings

Conditions for connecting a phone to the Infotainment system

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices* > > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices* > > *Visibility*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.

✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Phone operation

Entering phone number

1. In the **Phone** menu, tap .
2. Enter the phone number using the displayed numeric keypad.

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used to search for contacts.
For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter combination DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numerical keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **phone** menu, tap on .
› To **search** within the list, tap on *Enter contact* .
› Enter the details you wish to find.
› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

› To display the **details** for a contact, tap >.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on > .

Phone conversation

Depending on the context of the phone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

Ending dialling / Rejecting incoming call / Ending call

Answering an incoming call / Returning to the held call

Switching the ringer off

Switching the ringer on

Holding a call

Switching the microphone off

Switching the microphone on

Displaying caller details

Answering a call from the second phone during a call on the first phone
The ongoing call on the first phone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the call from the speakers to the phone,** go to the **Phone** menu and tap on > *Handsfree*.
› To **switch the call from the phone to the speakers,** tap .

Conference call

A conference call is a joint phone conversation with a minimum of 3 and a maximum of 6 participants.

› Make another call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

Or:

› Accept a new incoming call by tapping .

› To **start** a conference call, tap .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected, depending on the context:

- Hold the conference call and leave temporarily the conference continues in the background
- Return to the held conference call
- Switching the microphone off
- Switching the microphone on
- End conference call
- Show details of the conference call

The following functions can be selected from the conference call details, depending on the connected phone:

- Show details of the conference call participants
- End conversation with the conference call participant
- Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Settings for the Infotainment system phone functions

Phone – Infotainment connection types

The way in which the phone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment system.

› The main phone – if no phone is connected.

› Additional phone – if 1 phone is connected.

› Select which phone to replace – if 2 phones are connected.

› To switch between the main phone and the additional phone, tap **Phone** in the phone menu.

Phone - Infotainment connection

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.

   To find out the name of the unit, tap **MENU** > > > *Mobile device* > > *Device name:*.
3. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

Connecting the Infotainment system to an unpaired phone

1. Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
2. Tap > *Select mobile phone* in the **Phone** menu

   Or:

   Press **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices*.
3. Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
4. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If 2 phones are connected to the Infotainment system, select the phone to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously paired phone

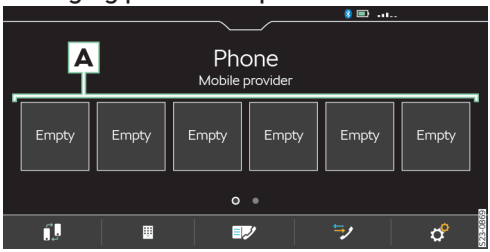
The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

1. Tap > *Select mobile phone* in the **Phone** menu

   Or:

   Press **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices*.
2. Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.
3. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
4. If 2 phones are connected to the Infotainment system, select the phone to be replaced.

Managing presets for preferred contacts



› To **save** the desired preset key, hold it in A.

› Select the contact from the list.

› If the contact contains multiple phone numbers, select the phone number you require.

› To **display the menu for deletion**, go to the **Phone** > menu and tap on *Manage favourites*.

› To delete **one** preset preferred contact, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all** preferred contacts, tap *Delete all* and confirm.

Importing telephone contacts

Once the main phone has been connected to the Infotainment system, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

The Infotainment system can import up to 5000 phone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can contain up to 5 phone numbers.

Depending on the type of phone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts
When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For **manual** update of the list in the **phone** > menu *tap on Import contacts* .

Sort contacts in the phone book
› In the **Telephone** >menu *Sort by:* Tap and select the sorting type.

Ringtone
Some phones do not allow the use of the phone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment system ringtone is used.

1. To **set the Infotainment system ringtone**, tap in the **Phone** menu > *Select ringtone*.
2. Select the ringtone.

Voice mailbox number
1. To **set the voice mailbox number**, tap in the **Phone** menu > *Voice mailbox number:*.
2. Enter the voice mailbox number.

Wi-Fi

Functionality
Wi-Fi can be used for SmartLink connection.

The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 8 mobile devices.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices*.

Function restriction

Wi-Fi Connection restrictions
In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, mobile devices connected via Wi-Fi can be disconnected or restricted.

Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connecting a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot
1. Switch on the Infotainment system Wi-Fi hotspot in **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Use as hotspot*.
2. Switch on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.
3. Find the Infotainment Wi-Fi from the list of available Wi-Fi devices.

   The Infotainment system name can be found under **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.
4. Select the Infotainment system hotspot and enter the password.

   The password to connect to the Infotainment hotspot can be found under **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network key*.
5. Confirm the connection.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot
The security level is set at *WPA2+WPA3* and cannot be changed.

Switching the data transfer between the Infotainment system and the connected device on/off
› To switch on/off data transfer with the connected device, tap **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices* > .

Changing the name of the Infotainment system hotspot
1. Tap **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.
2. Enter and confirm the password.

Changing the password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot
The password must have at least 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

1. Tap **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network key:*.
2. Enter and confirm the password.

Automatic connection using a QR code
1. Tap **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system*.
2. Turn on the QR code option on your mobile device.
3. Scan the QR code displayed on the Infotainment system screen with your mobile device.
4. Wait for the connection to be established or confirm the relevant messages.

SmartLink

Functionality
SmartLink allows certified applications to be displayed and operated from a connected mobile device on the Infotainment screen.

Certification may depend on the use of the most up-to-date SmartLink application.

Route guidance, phone, music and other apps may be used.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or Wi-Fi.

Supported connection types

SmartLink supports the following connection types:

› Android Auto
› Apple CarPlay

SmartLink connections overview

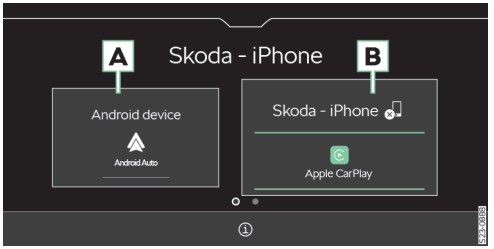
Displaying menu

› Tap **APP**.

Or:

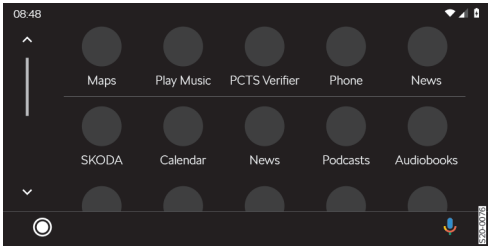
› Tap **MENU** > SmartLink.

If an Android Auto or Apple CarPlay connection is active, the SmartLink button will change to Android Auto or Apple CarPlay, depending on the type of active connection.



A Previously connected device
B Currently connected device
Displaying SmartLink information
Termination of the active connection
Setting up the SmartLink menu

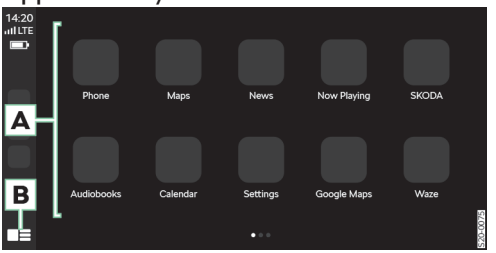
Android Auto



Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.
Switching on voice control (Google Assistant)

The appearance of the Android Auto screen may vary depending on your phone's system version.

Apple CarPlay



A List of available applications
B Depending on the length of operation:
› **Pressing:** returning to the Apple CarPlay menu
› **Holding:** turning on Siri voice control

The appearance of the Apple CarPlay screen may vary depending on your phone's system version.

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

✓ The mobile device supports the SmartLink type connectivity of Android Auto or Apple CarPlay
✓ The mobile device, as well as the type of SmartLink connectivity, are supported in the relevant market.
✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

✓ The device to be connected supports Android Auto connectivity.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Android Auto connectivity can be found on the Google, Inc website.

✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
✓ Some applications require the data connection on the mobile device to be turned on.
✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time when the vehicle is stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

✓ The device to be connected supports the Apple CarPlayconnection.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc.

✓ Siri voice control is on.
✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Restrictions

Wi-Fi Connection restrictions

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, mobile devices connected via Wi-Fi can be disconnected or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Restriction of the navigation function

If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay – USB connection

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. Select the connection via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – connection via Wi-Fi from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.
2. Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* in the Infotainment system.
3. Look for the desired device with the symbol in the displayed list, and select it.
4. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
5. If another device is connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay – connection via Wi-Fi from a mobile device

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
- ✓ The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® is on in the Infotainment system.

1. Switch on CarPlay in the mobile device.
2. Hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® device.

3. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
4. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.
5. If necessary, confirm the PIN.
6. Select the type of Apple CarPlay connection on the Infotainment system screen.

Apple CarPlay - terminating the connection

1. Tap “Skoda” in the Apple CarPlay Infotainment system menu.
2. Tap .

Android Auto – USB connection

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

- ✓ The minimum Android version is 6.

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. Select the connection via Android Auto.

Android Auto – connection via Wi-Fi from the Infotainment system

1. Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the desired device from the list of available devices.
3. Select the Bluetooth® handsfree profile.
4. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
5. If another device is connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.
6. From the list of known devices, select the desired device with the symbol.

Android Auto – connection via Wi-Fi from a mobile device

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

- ✓ The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® is on in the Infotainment system.
- ✓ The minimum Android version is 11.

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.
3. If necessary, confirm the PIN.
4. Select the type of Android Auto connection on the Infotainment system screen.

Android Auto - terminating the connection

1. Tap ◉ > “Skoda” in the Android Auto menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap .

Switching to another device/type of connection

The Infotainment system allows you to switch between the currently connected devices or connection type.

1. Tap **APP**.

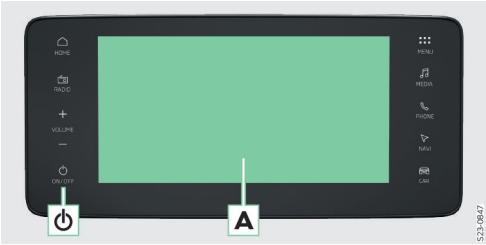
   Or:

   Tap **MENU** > .
2. Select the desired device or connection type.

If an Android Auto or Apple CarPlay connection is active, the button will change to or , depending on the type of active connection.

9" Infotainment system

The Infotainment system overview



A Touchscreen

HOME Favourites

RADIO **Radio** menu

+ Volume up

– Volume down

⏻ Depending on the status:

- **The Infotainment system off**
  - **Tapping:** switching the Infotainment system on
- **The Infotainment system on**
  - **Tapping:** switching the sound on/off
  - **Holding:** switching the Infotainment system off

MENU All menus

MEDIA **Media** menu

PHONE **Phone** menu

NAVI **Navigation** menu

CAR Information and the vehicle settings

System

Restrictions

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Some Infotainment system functions are not available when the ignition is switched off, e.g. driving data.

Basic setting

Setting basic functions

The following basic Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** > ⚙ menu:

- Time and date
- Language
- Units
- Factory settings

Sound settings

The Infotainment system sound is set in the **MENU** > 🔊 menu.

The following settings are available in the menu:

- Equaliser
- Volume ratio
- Individual Infotainment functions volume

  The volume can be adjusted in e.g. one of the following menu items:
  - Volume adjustment of voice commands
  - Maximum volume when the Infotainment system is switched on
  - Speed-dependent volume
  - Muting the Infotainment system with the Parking Aid switched on.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following advanced sound settings are available:

- Space optimisation
- Audio profiles according to genre
- Subwoofer volume

Configuration assistant

The configuration assistant helps you set up some functions of the Infotainment system.

The configuration assistant is automatically displayed when the ignition is switched on if there are at least 2 menu items that have not been set up after the Infotainment system is switched on.

- To **switch off the automatic display** when the configuration assistant is displayed, tap *Do not show again*.
- For **manual display** tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Configuration wizard*.

Setting up the HOME menu

To **display another page** of the HOME menu:

› Tap **HOME** again.

Or:

› Press the screen with two fingers and drag left or right.

To **add a favourite menu**, do the following:

1. Tap the blank function area.

   If the desired button is occupied, first remove the menu from the button.
2. Select the menu with the desired dimension of the function area.
3. Tap ✕ to exit the edit mode.

To **add a favourite menu**, do the following:

1. Hold the corresponding button.
2. Tap 🗑.
3. Tap ✕ to exit the edit mode.

Setting up the MENU menu

The layout of the buttons in the MENU can be customised as follows:

1. Press and hold the desired functional area until it is free.
2. Move the button to a different position.

Troubleshooting

The Infotainment system not responding

If the Infotainment system does not respond, restart it as follows:

1. Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.
2. Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist garage.

By updating the system, you can ensure optimum functionality of the Infotainment system.

Determine system version

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

System update

1. Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information* > *Update software*.
2. Follow the instructions on the display.

ⓘ Information about the completion of the system update is displayed in the list of information messages.

Display

Overview



A Status bar
B Bar with buttons of the displayed menu
C Displaying the control centre
D Other menu pages

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

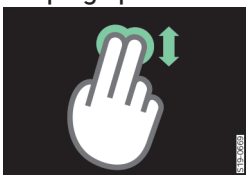
Risk of screen damage

› The Infotainment screen is operated by touching it lightly with your finger.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

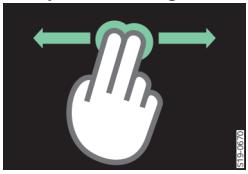
The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Swiping up or down with two fingers



› Scroll quickly through the phone contact list
› Changing the map view 2D/3D

Swipe two fingers left or right



› Displaying the next page in the HOME menu

Moving two fingers apart



› Zooming in on the map

Moving two fingers together



› Zooming out of the map

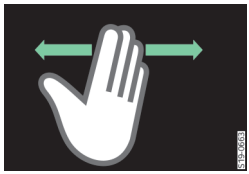
Rotating two fingers



› Rotating the map

Proximity gesture control

You can operate the Infotainment system menus marked with the symbol using a hand gesture.



› Make gestures by moving your hand slowly from side to side approximately 8 centimetres above the bottom edge of the screen.

Depending on the settings, the recognised gesture may be acknowledged audibly and animated.

Displaying operation help

› Tap on **MENU** > > .

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > *Screen*:

› Brightness level of the screen
› Switch off the screen
› Display the time
› Confirmation sounds and animations

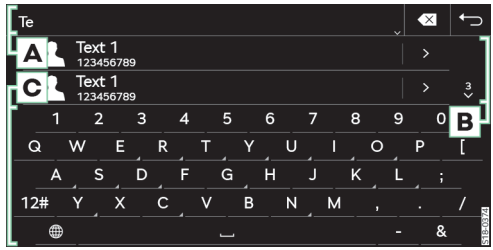
Keypad

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Keyboard types:

› Alphanumeric
› Numeric
› Keyboard for input
› Keyboard for search



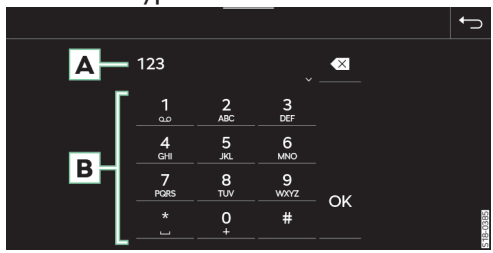
Keypad example

A Input line
› Deleting characters before the cursor
› **Tapping:** deleting the last character
› **Holding:** deleting all characters one after another
› Displaying keys for moving the cursor in the input line
› Moving cursor to the left
› Moving cursor to the right

B Retrieved entries
› Displaying the list

C Keypad keys
› Switching to lower case letters
› Switching to first capital letter, followed by lower case letters
› Switching to upper case letters
› **ABC/АБВ** Switching to the language keypad
› **12#** Switching to the numeric and character keypad
› **1/2/2/2** Switching to other character variants
› Displaying additional keypad languages
› Inserting a space
› Another line
› **Holding:** displaying more character variants
› Displaying the password being entered
› Confirming the entered characters

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line
› Deleting characters before the cursor
› **Tapping:** deleting the last character
› **Holding:** deleting all characters

B Keypad keys

› OK Confirming the entered characters

If the context allows, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a key with the number.

Operation

The infotainment keyboard is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keyboard will be **displayed automatically** when the infotainment prompts for characters.

Search

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

You can enter search terms including diacritical characters.

› To **show the retrieved entries**, press ⌄.

Displaying additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must first be set.

› Repeatedly tap ⊕ until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants

1. Press and hold the A symbol.
2. Select the desired symbol.

Setting additional keypad languages

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Additional keypad languages*.

Voice control

Functionality

The voice control principle

Voice control works on the principle of a dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user utters voice commands and the Infotainment system responds or executes the voice commands.

Voice control understands whole sentences spoken fluently. You do not need to use any precise instructions or phrases.

Online voice control

Online voice control allows online recognition and control of other vehicle functions.

Online voice control can be used, for example, to search for special destinations or to dictate an SMS message if the connected phone allows it.

The feature allows you to combine searches in online data and off-line Infotainment system data. The transition between online and off-line searches is seamless and not noticeable to the user.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on
✓ Infotainment switched on

Voice control function conditions

In order to use Extended Voice Control, the following additional conditions must be met:

✓ The vehicle supports the function.
✓ The vehicle is equipped with the Infotainment system and functions that can be controlled by Extended Voice Control.
✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network providing Škoda Connect services.
✓ The privacy level is set to *Sharing vehicle position*.

Activation command recognition condition

✓ Enabled **MENU** > ⚙ > *Voice control* > *Active*

Operation

Switching voice control on

› Press on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"**.

The symbol will appear after activation.

Entering a voice command

› With the voice control switched on, say the voice command.

The symbol is displayed while the voice command is being recognised.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays a message. The symbol is displayed while the message is being played.

After the voice command is executed, the voice control switches off.

You can speed up voice control as follows:

› Interrupt the voice assistant's response with a new command.

If the voice control does not respond to the voice command, try expanding the command more or using a verb in the command. For example, instead of a command “parking lot”, say “find a parking lot”.

Correcting a voice command

› During voice command input, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

Stopping voice control

Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"pause"**.

Resuming a paused voice control

A paused voice control can be restored in the following ways:

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
2. Press on the Infotainment system display.
3. Say the activation command **"OK Laura"** again.

Stopping the played back message

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Ending voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"cancel"** during voice command input.

Restrictions

For some Infotainment languages, there is no voice control available. The Infotainment system will indicate this.

The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

You cannot use voice control while a phone call is in progress.

Settings

The following voice control functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > *Voice control*:

› Confirmation tones

› Enable/disable use of the activation word.

Self-help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say **"Help"**.

The **"Help"** voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Displaying the help

› Tap on **MENU** > > .

Or:

› If Infotainment is expecting a voice command, say **"overview"**.

Switch example voice commands display on / off

The system offers the option of displaying example voice commands after switching on the voice control in the Infotainment screen.

› To **turn** **MENU** > > *voice control* on/off, tap > *Show in Infotainment system*.

Control centre

Overview

Displaying the control centre



› Tap the bar at the top of the screen and drag it down.

Closing the control centre

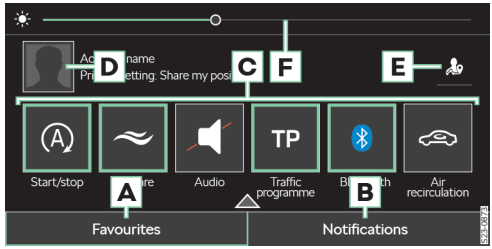
› Tap on ▲.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



- **A** Displaying and managing buttons for preferred functions
- **B** Displaying a list of information messages
- **C** Preferred functions
- **D** Displaying user account management
- **E** Setting the personal data protection level
- **F** Setting the instrument and key illumination

Setting buttons of preferred functions

› To **display** editing mode, hold any functional area for the preferred feature.
› To **add** the preferred feature, hold the button and move the desired function from the top of the screen to the button at the bottom of the display.
› To **close** the edit mode, press ✕.

Radio

Overview

Displaying menu

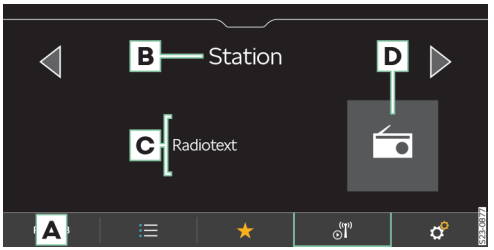
› Tap **RADIO**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > .

Analog and digital radio player

1. Tap A and select the desired frequency band.
2. Tap ⁝≡ and search for or select the desired station.
3. Tap ⮌.
4. Tap .



A Selecting a source
B Station name
C Broadcast content information
D Station logo
⁝≡ List of available stations
★ Show favourites
Station information
Manual search for stations (available for AM and FM frequencies)
Settings

List of available analog and digital radio stations

› Tap ⁝≡.

Current station
★ Station stored on the preferred stations presets
The DAB station broadcasts images displayed in the station information.
Manual update of the station list

The station list can display information about the program type and identification of the regional station.

Web radio player

The player is only functional when an internet connection is available.

1. Tap A and select the web radio.
2. Tap and search for or select the web radio.
3. Tap .



A Selecting a source
B Station name
C Broadcast content information
D Station logo
List of web radio stations and podcasts
★ Show favourites
Information about the radio station and web radio content
Settings

Podcast player

The player is only functional when an internet connection is available.

1. Tap A and select the web radio.
2. Tap and search for or select the podcast.
3. Tap .



A Selecting a source
B Podcast name
C Broadcast content information

D Podcast logo with the symbol

▷ Starting playback

Pausing

Rewind 15 seconds back

Fast forward 15 seconds

View episodes from the podcast being played

List of web radio stations and podcasts

★ Show favourites

View podcast information

Settings

List of web radio stations and podcasts

› Tap .



Searching for web radio stations and podcasts

Web radio stations and podcasts last listened to

Top 100 favourite radio stations based in the Infotainment system language setting

Searching and selecting podcasts

Searching and selecting web radios and podcasts based on the country

Searching and selecting web radios and podcasts based on the language

Searching and selecting web radios and podcasts based on the content

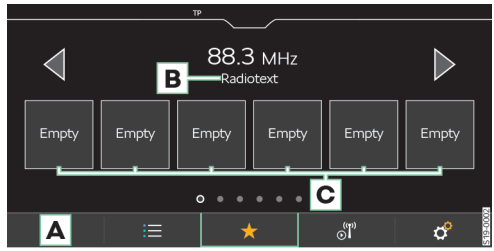
Displaying a list of related podcasts depending on the content you are listening to

Displaying a list of related web radio stations depending on the content you are listening to

The podcasts are marked with the symbol in the displayed lists.

List of preferred radio stations and podcasts

› Tap ★ in the Radio menu.



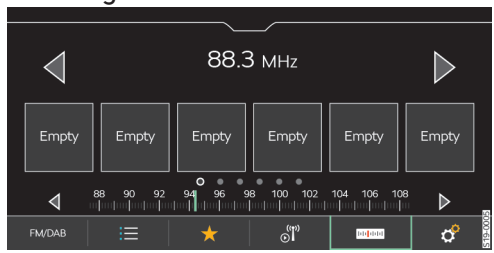
A Selecting a source

B Radio text

C Preset radio stations and podcasts

Operation

Selecting a station



› Tap ◁ or ▷ at the top of the screen.

The Scan function

The function plays receivable stations from the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start playback**, tap > *Scan*.

› To **stop playback**, tap SCAN.

Finding stations manually

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

› Tap in the Radio menu.

For FM stations, the button is available only if the *FM* option is selected in the Radio menu band selection > .

› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Restrictions

› The Infotainment system supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

› Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.

› There are antennas in the vehicle's rear windows for receiving radio signals.

Covering the glass with foils or metal-coated stickers can adversely affect radio signal reception.

› Škoda Auto assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu

› Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Saving a station to favourite items from the list of available stations

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

1. Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
2. Tap the desired favourite station preset.

Saving a station from the list of online stations and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts

1. Select web radios as a source of playback.
2. Tap 🔍.
3. Search for and select the desired web station or podcast.
4. Hold down the line with the name of the desired station or podcast.
5. Tap the desired favourite stations preset key.

ⓘ For podcasts, you cannot save individual episodes.

Deleting favourites

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Delete memory entries* .

› To delete **a** station button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.

› To delete **all** station buttons for preferred stations *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

◁ ▷ buttons for analogue and digital radios

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using the ◁ ▷ functional surfaces in the **Radio** menu can be set as follows:

1. In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Switching stations:*.
2. Select the option to switch between stations stored in your preferred presets or stations in the list of available stations.

◁ ▷ buttons for web radios and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts

The variant for **changing stations** using the ◁ ▷ functional surfaces in the **Radio** menu can be set as follows:

1. In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Switching stations:*.
2. Select the option to switch between stations stored in your favourites presets or stations in the list of available stations and podcasts.

Switch on/switch off traffic reception (TP) for stations

Applies to FM and DAB frequency range.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Traffic program (TP)* .

Assigning a station logo from the Infotainment system memory

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The Infotainment system allows you to assign logos stored in its memory to stations.

1. In **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Station logos*.
2. Select the preferred station and logo.

Switching off the station logo screen

Applies to FM and DAB frequency ranges.

1. In **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Station logos*.
2. Select the preferred station and press *No logo*.

Activating / deactivating automatic station logo assignment

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Automatic selection of station logos* .

Turn on/off radio text reception

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and the station buttons are displayed, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Radio text* .

Switching the function on/off Slideshow

Applies to DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, the images broadcast by the station are displayed in the player.

› Press the displayed radio text in the **Radio** player.

Regional FM station logo

Applies to FM frequency range.

The Infotainment system offers the option to use country-specific FM stations logos.

1. In the **Radio** menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Station logo region:*.
2. Select the country.

Switching additional announcements of the DAB station on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. These include e.g. Weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Additional DAB announcements* .

Switching the RDS on/off

Applies to FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for certain countries.

› In the **Radio** menu, press ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Radio-Data-System (RDS).*

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM stations** settings are not available:

› Traffic program (TP)
› Radio text
› Regional RDS
› Automatic frequency change (AF)
› Regional station logo

Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Switch to a similar station if weak reception* .

Sound quality of web radio stations and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

1. To set the sound quality, tap in the **Radio** menu ⚙ > *Audio quality:*.
2. Select high or low quality.

The quality setting affects the volume of data consumed by the data link.

The quality is also affected by the speed and availability of the data connection.

ⓘ If playback drop-outs occur, reduce the audio quality.

Media

What you should be mindful of

› Do not save any important data or data which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. Škoda assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
› Switching or connecting an audio source may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before switching or connecting an audio source.
› Information messages may appear on the source display while the audio source is being connected. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
› The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

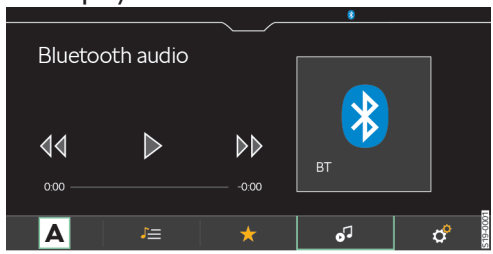
Display menu

› Tap **MEDIA**.

Or:

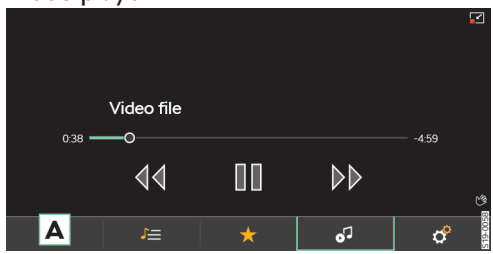
› Tap **MENU** > ♫.

Audio player



A Selecting a source
Manage files / Multimedia database
★ Show favourites
Details about the title being played
⚙ Settings

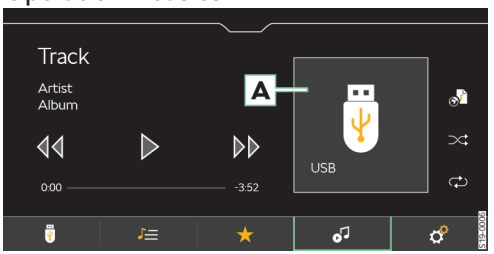
Video player



A Selecting a source
Manage files / Multimedia database
★ Show favourites
Video display
Downloading an image
Stretching the image
⚙ Settings

Player controls

Operation – basics



A Album image/symbol for the connected source
› Overview of available albums

▷ Starting playback

▯▯ Pausing

◁◁ Tapping within 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the previous track

◁◁ Tapping after 3 seconds from starting the playback: playing the current track from the beginning

◁◁ Holding: fast rewinding within the track

▷▷ Tapping: playing the next track

▷▷ Holding: fast forwarding within the track

You can also move within the track by dragging your finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder

Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder

Save the played track in the playlist "*My playlist*"

Managing "My playlist"

› To **display the playlist**, tap ♫≡ > ▣ > ✋ > .

› To **manage the playlist**, tap ✎ in the displayed playlist.

You can do the following in playlist management:

› Control playback

› Change the order of a track in the list by holding ≡ and dragging it to the desired position.

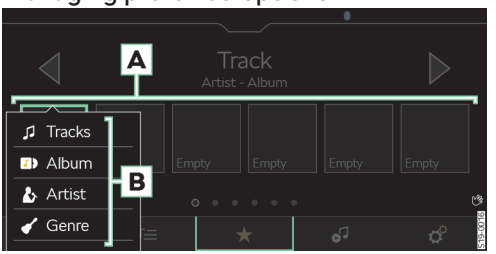
› Delete titles by pressing 🗑

Restrictions

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used.

Settings

Managing preferred options



› To **save**, hold down the desired favourites button A.

› Select one of the offered items B.

› To **delete** a track, go to the **Media** ⚙› menu and press *Manage favourites*.

› To delete **a single favourite**, press the desired item and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all favourites**, press *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

Traffic

› To **turn on/off** traffic monitoring during playback of media files, go to the **Media** in the main menu ⚙ > and tap on *Traffic program (TP)* .

Supported sources and files

USB

Applies to USB 1.x, 2.x , 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support.

Type	Specification	File system
MSC	USB flash disk	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
	HDD (without special software)	
	USB device supporting USB Mass Storage protocol	
MTP	Devices with the Android operating system supporting Media Transfer Protocol	

Type	Specification	File system
Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system and the iAP2 protocol	HFS+

ⓘ Apple protocol iAP1 is not supported by the Infotainment system.

Bluetooth® audio player

The Infotainment system supports Bluetooth® A2DP and AVRCP (1.0–1.6) protocols.

Compatibility of mobile devices

Visit the Škoda website to check whether the Infotainment system and the selected mobile device being tested are compatible, or do it by scanning the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All stated information is approximate and for your information only.

Škoda Auto cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software updates of the Infotainment system and mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1 Layer 2	mp2
MPEG 2 Layer 2	
MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3
MPEG 2 Layer 3	
MPEG 2.5 Layer 3	
Windows Media Audio 7	wma
Windows Media Audio 8	
Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	
Windows Media Audio 9.2	
Windows Media Audio 10	
AAC LC	aac m4a
AAC-HE	
AAC-HEv2	
ALAC	m4a
OGG-Vorbis	ogg
FLAC	flac
PCM	wav
RIFF	
SBC	-
Monkey's	ape
OPUS	OPUS

Files protected by DRM and iTunes® are not supported by the Infotainment system.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1	mpg mpeg m1v mpv
MPEG 2	mpg mpeg ps m2v
MPEG 4 (H.264)	m4p mp4 m4v mp4v mov
MJPEG	
MPEG 4 (ISO)	
Xvid	Xvid
WMV9	wmv asf

Supported playlists

File format	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

Mobile devices management

Cyber security

Your vehicle contains components that exchange information and data between the vehicle and connected mobile devices or the internet.

These components are equipped with security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle's systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and functions. However, observe the following guidelines:

› Use only data carriers, Bluetooth® and mobile devices that do not contain any malicious data or software.

› Regularly update the software provided by Škoda Auto.

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Malicious software in the vehicle can affect or deactivate certain vehicle functions or take control of them.

› If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, reduce speed or stop the vehicle immediately.
› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

Malicious software in the vehicle can gain unauthorised access to vehicle information and data or connected mobile devices.

Overview

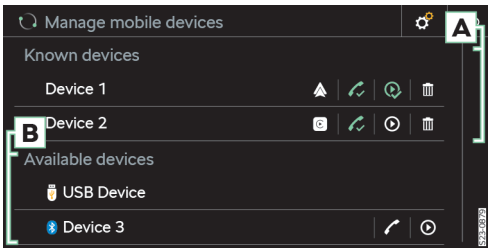
Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Displaying mobile device management

› Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices*.

Or:

› Tap ⚙ > *Select mobile phone* in the Phone menu.



A Connected/previously paired devices
B Available devices
The device enables connection via Bluetooth® “hands free” profile
The connected via Bluetooth® “hands free” profile
The device enables connection viaBluetooth® audio profile
The device is connected viaBluetooth® audio profile
Removing the device from the list of **previously connected devices**
The device enables SmartLink connection via Android Auto
The device enables SmartLink connection via Apple CarPlay

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

Visit the Škoda website to check whether the Infotainment system and the selected mobile device being tested are compatible, or do it by scanning the QR code:

https://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All stated information is approximate and for your information only.

Škoda Auto cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software updates of the Infotainment system and mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, absolute Bluetooth® compatibility with the Infotainment system cannot be guaranteed. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version on the Bluetooth® protocols implementation by the mobile device producer.

Applications in mobile devices

You can install applications on your mobile devices that allow you to show additional information on the Infotainment system display or to control the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work on all mobile devices, and Škoda Auto assumes no responsibility for their operation.

The range of available applications and their functionality depends on the type of the Infotainment system, type of vehicle and the region.

Information about Škoda applications

For detailed information about Škoda applications, please visit the website by scanning this QR code or following the link:

https://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connecting a mobile device to the Infotainment system

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.

   To find out the name of the unit, press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile device* > ⚙ > *Device name:*.
3. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a non-paired mobile device

1. Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
2. Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices*.

   Or:

   Tap ⚙ > *Select mobile phone* in the Phone menu.
3. Select the desired device from the list of available devices.
4. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If 2 devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously connected mobile device

The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

1. Press **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices*.

   Or:

   Tap ⚙ > *Select mobile phone* in the Phone menu.
2. Select the desired device from the list of already paired devices.
3. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
4. If 2 devices are connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection

The Infotainment system allows you to establish a SmartLink connection with a compatible mobile device using the following connections:

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment system via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as it is supported by the mobile device.

1. Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment system using a USBcable, or browse and connect it via Wi-Fi.
2. Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Phone

Overview

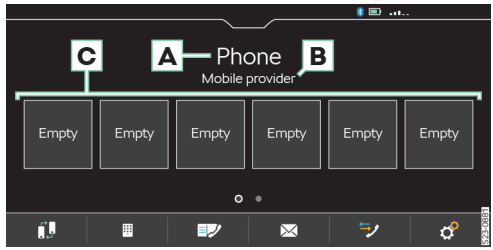
Displaying menu

› Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > ✓.

If the **Phone** menu is not displayed, check whether the phone is connected.



A Name of the connected phone:
› **Pressing:** displaying mobile devices management

B Name of the phone service provider
› If the name is preceded by the displayed ▷ symbol, roaming is active.

C Presets for preferred contacts

Swapping the main and additional phone

Entering phone number

Contact list

Text messages / E-mails

Call lists

Settings

Conditions for connecting a phone to the Infotainment system

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Visibility*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.

✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Phone operation

Entering phone number

1. In the **Phone** menu, tap .
2. Enter the phone number using the displayed numeric keypad.

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used to search for contacts.
For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter combination DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numerical keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **phone** menu, tap on .
› To **search** within the list, tap on *Enter contact* .
› Enter the details you wish to find.
› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

› To display the **details** for a contact, tap >.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on > .

Phone conversation

Depending on the context of the phone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

- Ending dialling / Rejecting incoming call / Ending call
- Answering an incoming call / Returning to the held call
- Switching the ringer off
- Switching the ringer on
- Holding a call
- Switching the microphone off
- Switching the microphone on
- Displaying caller details
- Rejecting an incoming call by a text message
- Answering a call from the second phone during a call on the first phone
  The ongoing call on the first phone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the call from the speakers to the phone,** go to the **Phone** menu and tap on > *Handsfree*.
› To **switch the call from the phone to the speakers,** tap .

Conference call

A conference call is a joint phone conversation with a minimum of 3 and a maximum of 6 participants.

› Make another call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

Or:

› Accept a new incoming call by tapping .
› To **start** a conference call, tap .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected, depending on the context:

- Hold the conference call and leave temporarily the conference continues in the background
- Return to the held conference call
- Switching the microphone off
- Switching the microphone on
- End conference call
- Show details of the conference call

The following functions can be selected from the conference call details, depending on the connected phone:

- Show details of the conference call participants
- End conversation with the conference call participant
- Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Sending a text message

1. In the **Phone** menu, tap > *Text messages* > *New text message*.
2. Type and confirm the text message, and a preview of the message will appear.

   If you tap the text area in the message preview, the message can be edited.
3. Search for or select the recipient of the message.
4. Add additional recipients or confirm the selected recipients.
5. Tap *Send*.

Displaying received text messages

› In the **Phone** menu, tap > *Text messages* > or .

Received messages are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation, depending on the following settings:

› To **switch on/off displaying messages as a conversation**, in the **Phone** menu tap > *Show text messages as a conversation*.
› To **switch on/off graphical notification** of the receipt of a new message, tap > *Notification of new messages* in the **Phone** menu.

Depending on the context, the Infotainment system can read for you a text message using Infotainment-generated voice, if you tap .

Sending an email

1. In the **Phone** menu, tap > *E-mails* > *New e-mail*.
2. Write and confirm the email, and its preview will be displayed.

   If you tap the text area in the preview, the text can be edited.
3. Search for or select the recipient of the email.
4. Add additional recipients or confirm the selected recipients.
5. Enter the subject of the e-mail.
6. Tap *Send*.

Displaying a received email

1. In the **Phone** menu, tap > *E-mails* > .
2. Select the desired email.

› To **switch on/off graphical notification** of the receipt of a new message, tap in the **Phone** menu > *Notification of new messages*.

Settings for the Infotainment system phone functions

Phone – Infotainment connection types

The way in which the phone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment system.

› The main phone – if no phone is connected.

› Additional phone – if 1 phone is connected.

› Select which phone to replace – if 2 phones are connected.

› To switch between the main phone and the additional phone, tap **Phone** in the phone menu.

Phone - Infotainment connection

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.

   To find out the name of the unit, tap **MENU** > > > *Mobile device* > > *Device name:*.
3. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.

Connecting the Infotainment system to an unpaired phone

1. Ensure Bluetooth® visibility of the mobile device.
2. Tap > *Select mobile phone* in the **Phone** menu

   Or:

   Press **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices*.
3. Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
4. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
5. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
6. If 2 phones are connected to the Infotainment system, select the phone to be replaced.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a previously paired phone

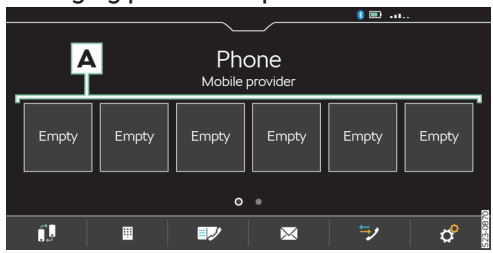
The connection to an already paired mobile device is made automatically when the ignition is switched on, or you can connect the devices manually in the following way:

1. Tap > *Select mobile phone* in the **Phone** menu

   Or:

   Press **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices*.
2. Select the desired device from the list of **known devices**.
3. Select the required Bluetooth® profile.
4. If 2 phones are connected to the Infotainment system, select the phone to be replaced.

Managing presets for preferred contacts



› To **save** the desired preset key, hold it in A.

› Select the contact from the list.

› If the contact contains multiple phone numbers, select the phone number you require.

› To **display the menu for deletion**, go to the **Phone** > menu and tap on *Manage favourites*.

› To delete **one** preset preferred contact, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all** preferred contacts, tap *Delete all* and confirm.

Importing telephone contacts

Once the main phone has been connected to the Infotainment system, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

The Infotainment system can import up to 5000 phone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can contain up to 5 phone numbers.

Depending on the type of phone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For **manual** update of the list in the **phone** ⚙ > menu *tap on Import contacts* .

Sort contacts in the phone book

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *Sort by:* Tap and select the sorting type.

Ringtone

Some phones do not allow the use of the phone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment system ringtone is used.

1. To **set the Infotainment system ringtone**, tap in the **Phone** menu ⚙ > *Select ringtone*.
2. Select the ringtone.

Voice mailbox number

1. To **set the voice mailbox number**, tap in the **Phone** menu ⚙ > *Voice mailbox number:*.
2. Enter the voice mailbox number.

Switching on/off graphical notification of receiving new message/email

With the function activated, when a new message/email is received, the new message symbol will appear in the status bar and on the message function surface.

› In the **Phone** menu, tap ⚙ > *Notification of new messages*.

Wi-Fi

Functionality

You can use the Wi-Fi to connect to the Internet or for SmartLink connections.

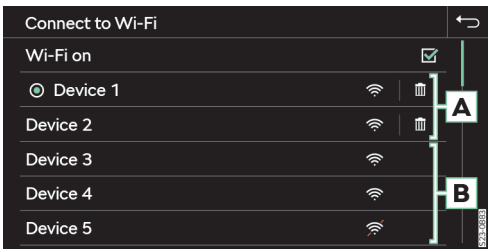
You can connect up to 8 mobile devices to the Infotainment system hotspot, and at the same time the Infotainment system can be connected to another hotspot.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected device*.

Overview of available hotspots

Displaying available hotspots

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:*.



A Previously connected hotspots

B Available hotspots

⊙ Currently connected hotspots

🗑 Deleting the connection information of a hotspot

Hotspot Wi-Fi signal strength

Insufficient security of the hotspot

Function restriction

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with secure WPA2/and WPA3 encryption.

Wi-Fi Connection restrictions

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, mobile devices connected via Wi-Fi can be disconnected or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connecting a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

1. Switch on the Infotainment system Wi-Fi hotspot in **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Use as hotspot*.
2. Switch on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.
3. Find the Infotainment Wi-Fi from the list of available Wi-Fi devices.

   The Infotainment system name can be found under **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.
4. Select the Infotainment system hotspot and enter the password.

   The password to connect to the Infotainment hotspot can be found under **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network key*.
5. Confirm the connection.

Connecting the Infotainment system to a mobile device hotspot

1. Switch on the Wi-Fi unit of the Infotainment system in **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:* > *Wi-Fi active*.
2. Select the desired hotspot from the list of available hotspots.
3. Enter a password to establish a connection to your mobile device.

ⓘ The Infotainment system remembers the passwords of previously connected hotspots.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at *WPA2+WPA3* and cannot be changed.

Switching the data transfer between the Infotainment system and the connected device on/off

› To switch on/off data transfer with the connected device, tap **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices* > .

Changing the name of the Infotainment system hotspot

1. Tap **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.
2. Enter and confirm the password.

Changing the password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot

The password must have at least 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

1. Tap **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network key:*.
2. Enter and confirm the password.

Automatic connection using a QR code

1. Tap **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system*.
2. Turn on the QR code option on your mobile device.
3. Scan the QR code displayed on the Infotainment system screen with your mobile device.
4. Wait for the connection to be established or confirm the relevant messages.

Tips for a perfect connection

ⓘ

› Keep only the hotspot to be connected switched on and switch off the other hotspots.
› Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required to establish a connection.
› For some hotspots, the connection takes longer, so wait for the connection to finish.
› If the connection is interrupted, recheck the available hotspots and repeat the connection.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink allows certified applications to be displayed and operated from a connected mobile device on the Infotainment screen.

Certification may depend on the use of the most up-to-date SmartLink application.

Route guidance, phone, music and other apps may be used.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or Wi-Fi.

Supported connection types

SmartLink supports the following connection types:

› Android Auto
› Apple CarPlay

SmartLink connections overview

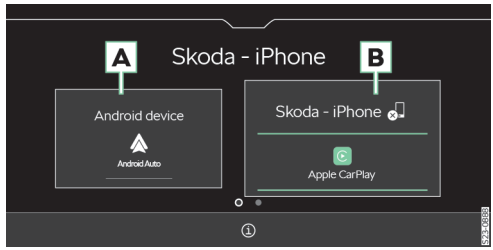
Displaying menu

› Tap **APP**.

Or:

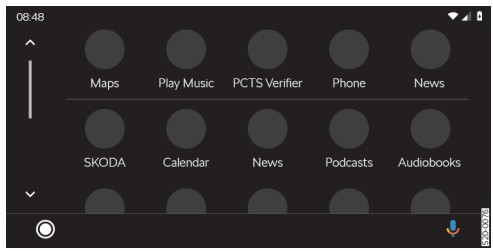
› Tap **MENU** > .

ⓘ If an Android Auto or Apple CarPlay connection is active, the button will change to or , depending on the type of active connection.



A Previously connected device
B Currently connected device
ⓘ Displaying SmartLink information
Termination of the active connection
Setting up the SmartLink menu

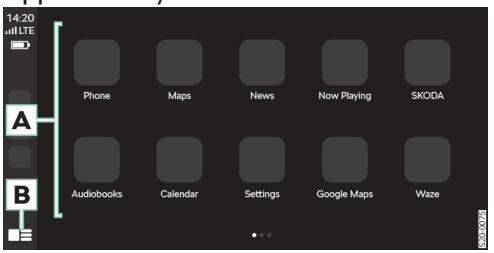
Android Auto



◉ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.
Switching on voice control (Google Assistant)

ⓘ The appearance of the Android Auto screen may vary depending on your phone's system version.

Apple CarPlay



A List of available applications

B Depending on the length of operation:
- › **Pressing:** returning to the Apple CarPlay menu
- › **Holding:** turning on Siri voice control

ⓘ The appearance of the Apple CarPlay screen may vary depending on your phone's system version.

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

- ✓ The mobile device supports the SmartLink type connectivity of Android Auto or Apple CarPlay
- ✓ The mobile device, as well as the type of SmartLink connectivity, are supported in the relevant market.
- ✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

- ✓ The device to be connected supports Android Auto connectivity.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Android Auto connectivity can be found on the Google, Inc website.
- ✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection on the mobile device to be turned on.
- ✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time when the vehicle is stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the Apple CarPlayconnection.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc.
- ✓ Siri voice control is on.
- ✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Restrictions

Wi-Fi Connection restrictions

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, mobile devices connected via Wi-Fi can be disconnected or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Restriction of the navigation function

If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay – USB connection

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. Select the connection via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – connection via Wi-Fi from the Infotainment system

1. Switch on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.
2. Press **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices* in the Infotainment system.
3. Look for the desired device with the symbol in the displayed list, and select it.
4. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
5. If another device is connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay – connection via Wi-Fi from a mobile device

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
- ✓ The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® is on in the Infotainment system.

1. Switch on CarPlay in the mobile device.
2. Hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® device.
3. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
4. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.
5. If necessary, confirm the PIN.
6. Select the type of Apple CarPlay connection on the Infotainment system screen.

Apple CarPlay - terminating the connection

1. Tap “Skoda” in the Apple CarPlay Infotainment system menu.
2. Tap .

Android Auto – USB connection

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

✓ The minimum Android version is 6.

1. Switch on the Infotainment system.
2. Switch on the mobile device.
3. Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
4. Select the connection via Android Auto.

Android Auto – connection via Wi-Fi from the Infotainment system

1. Press **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices* in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the desired device from the list of available devices.
3. Select the Bluetooth® handsfree profile.
4. Confirm, or enter and confirm the PIN.
5. If another device is connected to the Infotainment system, select the device to be replaced.
6. From the list of known devices, select the desired device with the symbol.

Android Auto – connection via Wi-Fi from a mobile device

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

✓ The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® is on in the Infotainment system.

✓ The minimum Android version is 11.

1. Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
2. Select the Bluetooth® in the Infotainment system.
3. If necessary, confirm the PIN.
4. Select the type of Android Auto connection on the Infotainment system screen.

Android Auto - terminating the connection

1. Tap > “Skoda” in the Android Auto menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap .

Switching to another device/type of connection

The Infotainment system allows you to switch between the currently connected devices or connection type.

1. Tap **APP**.

   Or:

   Tap **MENU** > .
2. Select the desired device or connection type.

ⓘ If an Android Auto or Apple CarPlay connection is active, the button will change to or , depending on the type of active connection.

Navigation

Navigation instructions

The Infotainment system navigates using graphic and voice navigation instructions.

ⓘ Voice instructions are generated by the Infotainment system and it cannot always be guaranteed that the instructions, e.g. street or city names, can be clearly understood.

Repeat the last navigation announcement

› Tap on ··· > .

Turn off navigation announcements

› Tap on ··· > .

Navigation overviews

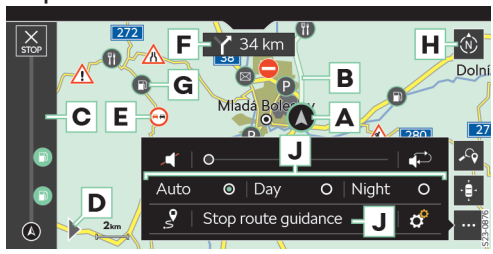
Displaying menu

› Tap **NAVI**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > .

Map overview



A Vehicle location

B Route

C Route preview

Exit navigation

D Display the destination entry menu and route preview

E Traffic restrictions

F The following navigation instruction

G Special destination

H Changing map orientation

- 2D north-facing map
- 2D map oriented by direction of travel
- 3D map oriented by direction of travel

Finding a destination

Map centred on vehicle position

Display settings menu

Switching off navigation messages

Repeating the last navigation instruction

Displaying standard map

J The map displayed is based on the following settings:

- *Auto* – map in day/night mode depending on the activated lights of the vehicle
- *Day* – map in day mode
- *Night* – map in night mode

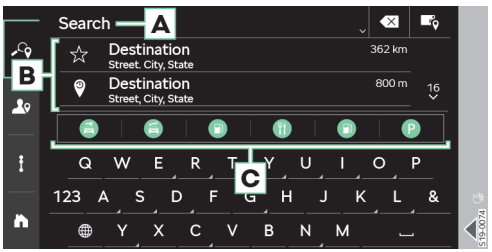
Displaying the entire route

K Exit navigation

Settings

Finding a destination

› Tap ▸ > .



A Input line

B The list of last searched destinations

C Categories of specific destinations

- **Tap:** search by the category selected

Displaying list of targets

Entering target by address / Finding target

Selecting a search target

1. Enter the data to search for a target.
2. Select the desired destination.

   The details of the destination are displayed with the option to start navigating.

Selecting a destination entered by address

1. Tap .

   The menu for entering a destination by address is displayed.
2. Enter the required details.

   The details of the destination are displayed with the option to start navigating.

List of saved destinations

› Tap ▸ > .



A List of saved destinations

B Select a category of saved destinations

- – favourite destinations
- – recent destinations
- – phone contact destinations

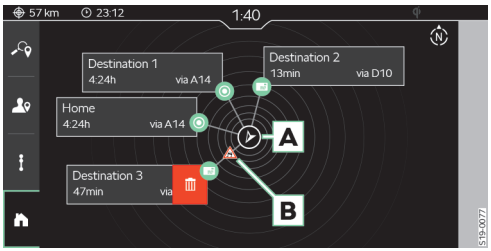
Selecting a saved destination

1. Select a category of saved destinations.
2. Select the desired destination.

   The details of the destination are displayed with the option to start navigating.

Recommended destinations

› Tap ▸ > .



A Vehicle position oriented north

B Traffic restrictions

🗑 Deleting a recommended destination

Up to 5 recommended destinations from the following categories can be displayed in the preview:

› Home address destination
› Business address destination
› Favourite destinations
› Recent destinations
› Predictive destinations

The destinations are oriented according to the direction to the current location of the vehicle. The destination button displays information about the estimated time to your destination.

If the vehicle has active online services and there is a traffic obstruction on the route to the destination, the traffic obstruction symbol is displayed.

Deleting a recommended destination

1. Tap the recommended destination button and drag with your finger to the left.
2. Tap 🗑.

Enabling/disabling predictive destination suggestions

Predictive destinations are automatically suggested by the Infotainment system depending on the frequency of trips and the time of day you drive to the destination.

If predictive destination suggestions are switched on, the system can offer these destinations in the suggested destinations and while driving.

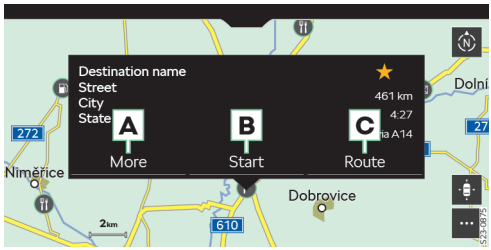
› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Learn usage patterns*.

Deleting information for suggesting frequently visited special destinations

1. Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Delete usage patterns*.
2. Confirm the deletion.

Selecting a destination by tapping a point on the map

› Tap the desired point or a special destination symbol on the map.

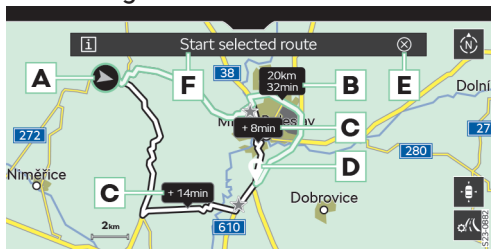


A The destination details are displayed with the following settings:
› ☆ – saving the destination as a preferred one
› ★ – deleting a favourite destination
› 🎞 – setting the destination as a starting point for navigation in demo mode

B Starting direct navigation to the destination

C Calculating routes

Calculating routes



A Current vehicle position

B Suggested fastest route

C Alternative routes

D Destination location

E 15 s countdown before automatic start of navigation
› **Pressing:** interrupting the countdown

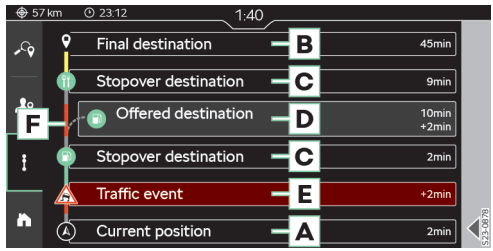
F Starting navigation

ⓘ Displaying the selected route information

Setting parameters for route calculation

Route overview

› Tap ▶ > ⁝.



A Information on the current vehicle position

B Final destination of the route
Tapping: option to select the following items:
› *Show on map*
› *Stop route guidance*

C Inserted destination of the route
Tapping: option to select the following items:
› *Show on map*
› *Delete*

D Destination offered by the Infotainment system on the route

Tapping: option to select the following items:
- › *Show on map*
- › *Add stopover*

E Traffic restrictions on the route

Tapping: option to select the following items:
- › *Show on map*
- › *Bypass*

F Route preview

Final destination of the route

In the route overview, the destination and the inserted destinations can be interchanged and their order changed.

1. Hold the line with the desired destination until the destination button is unlocked.
2. Drag the destination to the desired position and release the button.

The route will be recalculated.

Traffic density overview

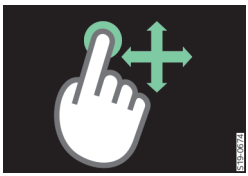
If the Škoda Connect online services are active, the following colour scale can be used to display traffic density information in the **F** route overview:

Low density — — — High density

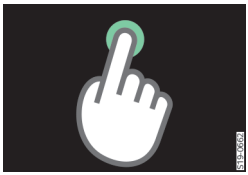
— Traffic density information is not available

Touch control

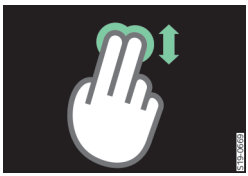
Gesture control



› Scrolling the map



› Tapping a point on the map to enter a destination



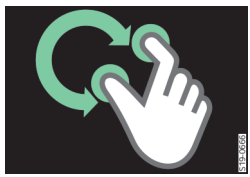
› Changing the map view 2D/3D



› Zooming in on the map



› Zooming out of the map



› Rotating the map

Restrictions

The Infotainment system may issue incorrect driving recommendations if the road condition or traffic conditions do not match the navigation data. This may result in a situation, for example, when the driver is directed to take a different route or a change of direction is suggested to a one-way street.

For information on updating navigation data, please contact your Škoda Partner.

Settings

Bypassing a traffic obstruction

If the function is switched on and the Infotainment system receives information about a traffic obstruction on the route from the online traffic news, the route will be recalculated.

Based on the following settings, the Infotainment system may suggest to avoid a traffic congestion:

1. Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Avoid traffic congestion*.
2. Select the desired item.

Displaying information for the destination/entered destination

The status bar displays information on the distance and driving time to the destination depending on the following settings:

1. Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Display information about:*.
2. Select the desired destination type.

Displaying information on arrival time to destination / journey time

The status bar displays information on the journey time depending on the following settings:

1. Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Display time:*.
2. Select the desired item.

Switching display of country-specific speed limits on / off

When the function is switched on, the country-specific speed limits are displayed when crossing national borders.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Country information at border crossings*.

Switching the display of road signs on motorways and expressways on / off

When the function is switched on, Infotainment displays traffic and information signs on motorways and expressways.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Information signs on motorways and dual carriageways*.

Switching the fuel warning on / off

When the function is switched on and the fuel supply reaches the reserve area, a warning message appears with the option of going to the nearest petrol station.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Fuel warning*.

Setting the route parameters

1. After selecting the route destination, tap 🔧.
2. Select the desired items.

Setting navigation instructions

1. Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Navigation announcements*.
2. Select and set the desired item.

Enabling/disabling predictive destination suggestions

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Learn usage pattern*.

Deleting information for suggesting frequently visited special destinations

1. Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Delete usage patterns*.
2. Confirm the deletion.

Displaying preferred categories of special destinations

The preferred categories of special destinations are displayed on the map and offered when you search for a destination.

1. Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Specify preferred special destination categories*.
2. Set the preferred categories.

Setting home address

The defined destination of the home address is displayed in the overview of recommended destinations.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Enter home address*.

Setting business address

The defined destination of the business address is displayed in the overview of recommended destinations.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Enter business address*.

Switching demo mode on / off

In demo mode, the route guidance from the starting point of the demo mode to the selected destination is simulated.

When the function is switched on, Infotainment issues a query before the start of route guidance as to whether the route guidance should be carried out in the normal way or in demo mode.

› ··· > ⚙ > *Tap on Basic functions* > *Demo mode* .

Setting the demo mode starting point

1. Select or search for the desired destination to be the demo mode starting point.
2. Tap *More* > 🎞 in the displayed destination details.

Updating the navigation database

For information on updating the navigation database, please contact your Škoda Partner.

Automatic update

Infotainment automatically carries out an update if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The Infotainment Online online services are available.
- ✓ An update of the navigation database for the current vehicle position or route destination is available.

Determining the navigation database version

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

Online services

Škoda Connect

Regulations

Rights and obligations of the parties arising from the provision of these services are regulated in a separate contractual arrangement. Current legal documents relating to Škoda Connect services can be found on Škoda Connect Portal and in MyŠkoda application.

Functionality

Škoda Connect services allow you to connect your vehicle to the online world. This extends the functions of the vehicle and the Infotainment system.

The Škoda Connect services are not included in the vehicle equipment. They are ordered separately in the MyŠkoda application.

The range of Škoda Connect services depends on the type and equipment of the vehicle, on the Infotainment system and the country.

The Škoda Connect website

The Škoda Connect website shows e.g. updated information on Škoda Connect services, a link to Škoda Connect Portal or the option to download MyŠkoda application.

The website will be displayed when the following QR code or link is loaded:

https://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect

The Škoda Connect Portal website

The Škoda Connect Portal website enables, for example, user registration, ordering Škoda Connect services, service management or remote access to the vehicle.

The website will be displayed when the following QR code or link is loaded:

https://go.skoda.eu/connect-portal

Conditions

Škoda Connect services - conditions of use

- ✓ The registered primary user is in the vehicle.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ The currently logged-in user is authorised to use Škoda Connect services.
- ✓ The set level of protection for sending personal data enables the use of Škoda Connect services.

Availability of Škoda Connect services

Availability is based on the following conditions:

- › Mobile networks providing connection to Škoda Connect services are available.
  - › Availability, functionality, connection speed and mobile network technology may vary from country to country, depending on your mobile network provider.
  - › In areas with limited signal, e.g. underground garages, etc., the function may be limited.
- › Škoda Connect services are available for your vehicle, for the Infotainment system and for the country.
  - › You can check availability on the following Škoda Connect website:

https://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect-availability

Availability of Škoda Connect services

The availability status is indicated by the colour of the symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment system screen.

- › **White** – Škoda Connect services are available.
- › **Grey** – Škoda Connect services are not available.

Restrictions

Škoda Connect services may be limited or interrupted in the following cases:

- › During maintenance, deactivation, software updates, or restrictions with mobile network providers.

› Failure or insufficient reception of the GPS or mobile network signal, e.g. at high speed.
› If you are in locations with poor or no signal, e.g. underground garages, tunnels, mountain valleys.
› In case of limited availability, incomplete or incorrect information from third party providers, e.g. map display.

MyŠkoda application

Functionality

MyŠkoda application

The MyŠkoda website enables, for example, user registration, ordering Škoda Connect services, or remote access to the vehicle.

You can download the application to your mobile device by loading the following the QR code or the link:

https://go.skoda.eu/myskoda

Conditions

✓ The user has the Škoda ID account paired with the vehicle.
✓ The Škoda Connect services in the vehicle are active.

Škoda Connect services user registration and activation

Functionality

By registering as a user, you will receive a Škoda ID user account that you can use in all Škoda applications and services.

You can register as a Škoda Connect user in MyŠkoda application.

› Follow the instructions in MyŠkoda application to register.

When registering, you will create an S-PIN. The S-PIN is used to authorise requirements within some Škoda Connect services and to log in to your protected user account.

Settings

activation of Škoda Connect services

The services are activated by the login of the main user.

After the main user is activated, the *Share my position* mode is switched off.

Setting personal data protection

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by Škoda Auto in accordance with the generally binding legal provisions.

The current privacy statement on protecting personal data can be found on this website:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

As a party to the use of Škoda Connect services, you must ensure the protection of personal data and privacy rights.

Inform vehicle users and passengers that the vehicle transmits user data and uses location services. Failure to inform may violate the rights of vehicle users and passengers.

Localisation services include, for example, information about the last parking position, notifications about leaving an area or speeding notifications.

If the passenger does not agree to the use of location services, turn off the services by setting the appropriate privacy level.

Functionality

When using Škoda Connect, data about the user, the vehicle and localisation services information is transferred.

The transmission is influenced by personal data protection settings.

The personal data protection settings affects the transmission of data via eSIM. It does not affect the data transmission of the connected device via Wi-Fi.

Settings

Legally required services, such as emergency calls, cannot be switched off.

Each vehicle user can set the level of personal data protection

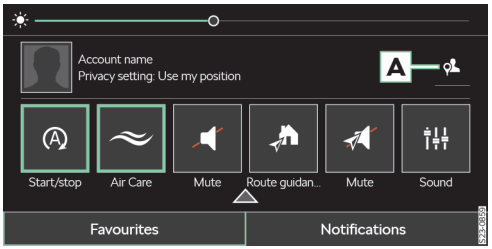
The level of personal data protection is linked to the User Account and is set according to the last set level when the user logs in.

Some Škoda Connect services require location services to be activated in order to be fully functional.

Settings privacy modes in the control centre



› Open the Infotainment control centre by tapping and dragging the bar at the top of the screen downwards.



A Press the symbol to display the privacy mode settings menu

Settings privacy modes in the main menu

Applies to 8" Infotainment system

1. Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Škoda Connect (online services)* > *Privacy settings and services*.
2. Setting required personal data protection level.

Settings in user management

Applies to 9" Infotainment system

1. Tap **MENU** > 👤 > ⚙ > *Privacy settings and services*.
2. Setting required personal data protection level.

Maximum privacy

› All Škoda Connect services, except those required by law, are switched off.
› All localisation services are disabled. Vehicle position information is not shared.
› Information transfer via eSIM is disabled.
› No online updates are available.

No position data

› All Škoda Connect localisation services are disabled. Vehicle position information is not shared.
› Information transfer via eSIM is enabled.
› All functions requiring an eSIM connection are active.

Use my position

› Škoda Connect localization services are enabled. Vehicle location information is not provided to others.
› Vehicle location information is available on the Škoda Connect Portal website and in the MyŠkoda application.
› Information transfer via eSIM is enabled.
› All functions requiring an eSIM connection are active.

Share my position

› Škoda Connect localization services are enabled. Vehicle location information is available for all services that require data of the vehicle's location to function.
› Vehicle location information is available on the Škoda Connect Portal website and in the MyŠkoda application.
› Information transfer via eSIM is enabled.
› All functions requiring an eSIM connection are active.

Collection of anonymous data

With the personal data protection level set to *Use my position* and *Share my position*, the vehicle can collect and transmit undisclosed data to improve the services of selected third parties.

These are exclusively undisclosed data without any link to a specific vehicle, its owner or other authorised user.

User management

What you should be mindful of

Applies to 9" Infotainment system

If you have bought an older vehicle with Škoda Connect services, they may still be active and the previous owner of the vehicle may be the primary user. The previous owner may still be able to control the vehicle's functions and obtain information about users and the vehicle.

We therefore recommend deleting the previous primary user. Then log in with your own user account and set yourself as the primary user of the vehicle.

If you register a new user and select yourself as the primary user during registration, the previous one will be automatically overwritten.

ⓘ The type of user and vehicle information to be sent can be influenced by setting the protection level of personal data.

Functionality

Applies to 9" Infotainment system

User accounts

User management displays a list of logged-in users in the car. In user management, you can do the following:

› Select a user account
› Register a user
› Activate the Škoda Connect services

› Add and remove user accounts
› Set up the primary user
› Set the security of the account

Overview

Applies to 9" Infotainment system

The primary user

The primary user is registered in the Infotainment system with activated Škoda Connect services and a vehicle assigned to their account.

The primary user can make full use of the personalisation function.

The primary user has full control over the settings and operation of the vehicle.

The primary user has access to remote vehicle functions.

All settings are stored in the primary user's personal online account.

User with online Škoda Connect account

The user is not selected by the primary user, but has their own onlineŠkoda Connect account.

The user can make full use of the personalisation function.

All settings are stored in the logged-in user's personal online account.

Guest

The guest account is anonymous and does not synchronise with Škoda Connect services in any way.

All changes to the settings associated with this account remain stored in the vehicle only.

The guest user account does not store personalization settings. The settings remain the same as the last user logged in.

Conditions

Applies to 9" Infotainment system

In order to enjoy unlimited use of user account management and synchronisation with online accounts, the following conditions must be met:

✓ The primary user is registered in the Infotainment system with active Škoda Connect services.
✓ Škoda Connect services are available.

Operation

Applies to 9" Infotainment system

User logging in

When the ignition and the Infotainment system are switched on, the initial login screen for the last user account used will be displayed.

› Confirm the logging in.

If you are logging in to a protected user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm.

Or:

1. Select the item for changing the user.
2. Select the desired account.
3. If you are logging in to a protected user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm.

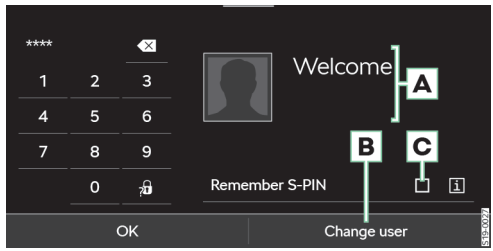
Or:

1. Select the item for changing the user.
2. If you are a new user, tap *New user* to log in.
3. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen

Logging in to a protected user account

Some user accounts may be protected. Protected accounts are marked with the symbol 🔒 in the user list.

To **log in** to a protected user account, it is required to enter S-PIN you created when opening your user account on Škoda Connect Portal, in MyŠkoda application or during the user registration in the Infotainment system.



A User name
B Displaying user account management
C Switching off login to your account using the S-PIN
ⓘ Displaying information on the S-PIN
Displaying information to restore the S-PIN

ⓘ Verifying the user by setting the S-PIN can be switched on/off in **MENU** > 👤 > ⚙ > *Protect user profile* > *Protect user profile with S-PIN*.

Restoring S-PIN

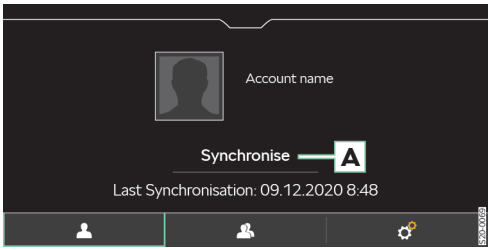
You can restore your S-PIN on the Škoda Connect Portal website, or in MyŠkoda application.

› After restoring the S-PIN, register again in the car as the primary user for MyŠkoda application to function correctly.
› If you are the primary user in more than one vehicle, re-register in each one.

User logging out
When the ignition is switched off, the logout screen appears and the user is automatically logged out.

Settings
Applies to 9" Infotainment system

User management
› Tap **MENU** > .



A Online user account synchronization with information about the last synchronization

Details of the currently selected user
› – User account protected by an S-PIN.

Switching to another user / Entering a new user

Settings

Tap Become main user
› **MENU** > > > *Tap Become main user* and follow the instructions on the screen.

Deleting a user
1. To display user accounts, tap **MENU** > > > *Delete users*.
2. To delete a user, select the user and confirm the deletion.

Deleting the current user account
1. Tap **MENU** > > > *Delete user profile*.
2. Confirm the deletion.

Deleting primary user account from the user management
› Tap **MENU** > > > *Delete users* > > *Delete profile*.

Deleting primary user account and logging out the user in the car
› Tap **MENU** > > > *Delete users*> > > *Return*.

Deleting all users
Restoring the Infotainment system factory settings deletes all user accounts.

1. Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment system.
2. Tap **MENU** > .
3. Select *Restore factory settings* and confirm.

To check if the factory reset was successful, it is recommended to check the user accounts and delete the primary user account.

User account

What you should be mindful of
Applies to 8" Infotainment system

If you have bought an older vehicle with Škoda Connect services, they may still be active and the previous owner of the vehicle may be the primary user. The previous owner may still be able to control the vehicle's functions and obtain information about the user and the vehicle.

We therefore recommend deleting the previous user. Then log in with your own user account.

If you register a new user, the previous user will be automatically overwritten.

Conditions
Applies to 8" Infotainment system

The Škoda Connect services must be available for managing your user account.

Settings
Applies to 8" Infotainment system

Deleting a user
1. Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment system.
2. Select the following menu:

   MENU > > *Škoda Connect (online services)* > *Registration*.
3. Tap *Delete active user* > *Delete*.
4. Confirm the deletion.

By deleting a registered vehicle in the user account on the Škoda Connect Portal, you also delete the user account in the Infotainment system.

The user can be deleted by resetting the Infotainment system to factory settings. To check if the factory reset was successful, it is recommended to check the deletion of the active user account.

Personalisation

Use
Applies to 9" Infotainment system

Personalisation is used to save the settings of the car's personalised functions to an active Škoda ID user account. Every change to the function settings is automatically saved when the ignition is switched off if the car is within the range of the contractual mobile network.

By logging in to the user account in another Škoda vehicle, the customisable functions associated with the user account are synchronised depending on the vehicle type, equipment and the Infotainment system.

The guest user account does not store personalization settings. The settings remain the same as the last user logged in.

eSIM data connection

Use

Applies to 9" Infotainment system

You need a data connection in the vehicle to use all online services.

Ways of creating a data connection

› By connecting the Infotainment system to an external hotspot with internet access via **Wi-Fi**.

Or:

› Via a data package for **eSIM** in the car.

ⓘ For more information on how the data connection works, how to register to use the data packages in the car, the availability of the data connection and an overview of the data packages and the countries where they can be purchased, visit the following website:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

Restrictions

Applies to 9" Infotainment system

› In areas with limited signal, e.g. underground garages, etc., the function may be limited.
› Availability, functionality, connection speed and mobile network technology may vary from country to country, depending on your mobile network provider.
› Škoda Auto accepts no liability for changes in the mobile network over time, e.g. generational replacement of outdated technology.

Settings

Applies to 9" Infotainment system

Turning on/off the data connection to create a hotspot in the car

You can use a prepaid data connection to create a hotspot in the car.

The data connection can be shared by up to 8 connected devices via Wi-Fi.

› In the Infotainment system, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Use as hotspot*.

Data package usage overview

You can purchase data packages on the following web site in data connection overview of your user account and view the current status of the already purchased packages:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

Online system update

Use

Online update allows you to update the car's software without the need for a service visit.

For more information about online update, please visit the following website:

https://go.skoda.eu/online-system-update

Operation

Installing the update

Once the update is available, the option to start the update will appear on the Infotainment system logout screen after the ignition is switched off.

1. Safely park the vehicle.
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Information about the available update will appear on the Infotainment system screen.
4. Tap the *Start* button.
5. Leave the car and lock it.
6. After returning to the car, turn on the ignition and check the result of the update on the Infotainment system screen.

⚠ WARNING

Emergency calls may not be available during installation.

› Install the update when the vehicle is stationary.

Conditions

The following conditions must be met for a successful update:

✓ Ignition is switched off.

- ✓ Škoda Connect services have been activated in the car.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are available.
- ✓ The vehicle is connected to the internet.
- ✓ *Maximum privacy* is not set in the vehicle.
- ✓ The 12V vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

Troubleshooting

If any of the following events occur while downloading the update or during installation, please contact a service provider:

- › A message appears in the Infotainment screen regarding an incorrect download or installation of the update.
- › The Infotainment screen goes out after switching on.
- › The emergency call indicator lamp lights up red.

Shop

Use

Applies to 9" Infotainment system

You can do the following activities in the Infotainment system Shop menu:

- › Order new Škoda Connect features and services
- › Renew the purchased Škoda Connect features and services
- › Buy data packages

Data packages can also be used by devices connected via Wi-Fi.

For more information on how the data connection works, how to register to use the data packages in the car, the availability of the data connection and an overview of the data packages and the countries where they can be purchased, visit the following website:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

Services and features may be time-limited or permanent.

Services and features can also be purchased on the Škoda Connect Shop website.

https://shop.skoda-connect.com

Overview

Applies to 9" Infotainment system

1. Tap **MENU** > .
2. Select the desired function or service from the displayed list.

Conditions

Applies to 9" Infotainment system

The availability of services and features depends on the type of vehicle, type of the Infotainment system and the country.

The following conditions must be met to activate new services and features:

- ✓ The Infotainment system supports activation of new services and features.
- ✓ The vehicle equipment allows the use of the new service or feature.
- ✓ The main vehicle user is logged in.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are available.
- ✓ The 12V vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

Some services or functions require an active data connection. The data connection may incur a charge.

Activated services and functions are not linked to the validity period of Škoda Connect services.

Restrictions

Applies to 9" Infotainment system

The functions are linked to the vehicle, not to the main user account. These cannot be transferred to any other vehicle in which the user logs on.

Information calls

Use

You can use the information call in case of problems with Škoda Connect services or to obtain information about Škoda products and services.

Conditions

- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ The privacy level is set to *Share vehicle position*.

Operation



› Press the button.

Tap the button to contact the local hotline.

Breakdown call

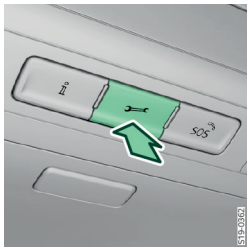
Use

Breakdown call can be used in case of the vehicle breakdown.

Conditions

- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ The privacy level is set to *Share my position*.

Operation



› Press the button.

Tap the button to contact the Škoda assist service. The vehicle also sends information about the status and position of the vehicle.

Planning a service visit

Use

If the vehicle detects that a service visit is necessary, it will automatically send this information to the service partner of your choice.

The service partner will then contact you and schedule the service visit with you.

Conditions

Availability of the service and related functions is subject to the following conditions:

- ✓ A service partner is selected on the Škoda Connect Portal or in MyŠkoda application, and Service appointment scheduling is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle type, equipment and the Infotainment system type are supported.
- ✓ The personal data protection level is not set to *Maximum privacy*.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are available.

Vehicle health card

Use

The vehicle's health card function allows you to monitor the status of your vehicle online.

The service is available in the MyŠkoda application.

The available vehicle data includes, for example, the distance travelled, selected warning messages or service requests.

Conditions

Availability of the service and related functions is subject to the following conditions:

- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ The set personal data protection level must allow the necessary data to be sent.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are available.

Škoda Connect services

Use

Remote access to the vehicle

The service relating to remote access to the vehicle offers the possibility of remotely controlling certain vehicle functions and accessing vehicle information.

Available functions include, for example, the following:

- › Locking and unlocking
- › Last parking position
- › Vehicle status

Infotainment Online

The Infotainment Online package of services extends the Infotainment navigation with online services.

Available services include:

- › Online destination import
- › Online traffic information
- › Online map updates

Conditions

Availability of the service and related functions is subject to the following conditions:

- ✓ The vehicle type, equipment and the Infotainment system type are supported.
- ✓ The set personal data protection level must allow the necessary data to be sent.
- ✓ The registered primary user is in the vehicle.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are active.
- ✓ Škoda Connect services are available.

Starting and driving

Starting with the key

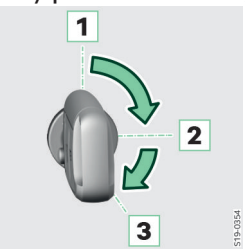
Notes on starting

⚠ DANGER

Danger of poisoning by exhaust gases!

› Do not run the engine in an enclosed space.

Key positions in the ignition switch



1 Ignition off
2 Ignition on
3 Starting the engine

Starting a vehicle with manual gearbox

1. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
2. Move the gear lever to the neutral position.
3. Keep the clutch pedal depressed.
4. Turn the key to position 3.
5. Release the key.

Starting a vehicle with automatic gearbox

1. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
2. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
3. Move the selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
4. Turn the key to position 3.
5. Release the key.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of unexpected vehicle movement!

› At temperatures below -10°C, start the vehicle with the selector lever in the **P** position.

Stopping the engine

1. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
2. Turn the key to position 1.

On vehicles with automatic gearbox, the key can only be removed from the ignition switch when the selector lever is in the **P** position.

⚠ WARNING

Steering lock hazard!

› If the vehicle is moving with the engine off, e.g. when towing, switch on the ignition.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of engine overheating!

› Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been running at high loads. Leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute.

Starting with the push button

Notes on starting

⚠ DANGER

Danger of poisoning by exhaust gases!

› Do not run the engine in an enclosed space.

Operating conditions

✓ Vehicle key is inside the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of key loss, possibly of key damage!

The system can detect the key even if it has been forgotten on the vehicle roof.

› Always keep the key with you.

Switching the ignition on and off



› Press the starter button.

Starting a vehicle with manual gearbox

1. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
2. Move the gear lever to the neutral position.
3. Keep the clutch pedal depressed.
4. Press the starter button.

Starting a vehicle with automatic gearbox

1. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
2. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
3. Move the selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
4. Press the starter button.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of unexpected vehicle movement!

› At temperatures below -10°C, start the vehicle with the selector lever in the **P** position.

Stopping the engine

1. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
2. Press the starter button.

⚠ WARNING

Steering lock hazard!

› If the vehicle is moving with the engine off, e.g. when towing, switch on the ignition.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of engine overheating!

› Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been running at high loads. Leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute.

Starting issues

Troubleshooting

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine

› Do not start the vehicle by towing.

The engine does not start

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Wait 30 seconds and repeat the starting procedure.
3. If the engine does not start, use the jump start leads with the 12V vehicle battery of another vehicle » *page 164* or seek assistance from a specialist garage.

The engine does not start, the screen shows a message about the immobiliser

1. Use the other vehicle key.
2. If the engine does not start, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

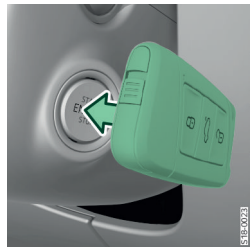
The key cannot be turned in the ignition

› Move the steering wheel back and forth while turning the key.

Starting is not possible with the starter button, the system did not detect the key



illuminated



1. Press the starter button with the key.
2. If the engine does not start, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

ⓘ The key might not be detected if the battery in the key is nearly discharged or the signal is faulty.

The engine cannot be turned off with the starter button

› Hold the starter button or press it twice.

The radiator fan keeps running even after the engine has stopped

The radiator fan may continue to run for approximately 10 minutes after the engine stops. This is not a fault.

The engine makes noises after a cold start

The increased running noise is due to the briefly increased engine speed. This is not a fault.

START-STOP

Use

The START-STOP decreases emissions of CO_2 and harmful emissions and saves fuel.

Functionality

If the system determines that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops, it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

Vehicle with manual transmission

A system-related engine switch-off occurs when stopping, when the gear lever is moved into the neutral position, and when the clutch pedal is released.

A system-related engine start occurs when the clutch pedal is depressed.

Vehicle with automatic transmission

A system-related engine switch-off occurs when the brake pedal is depressed and the engine is stopped.

A system-related engine start takes place when the brake pedal is released.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

Ⓐ – the engine is turned off by the START-STOP system

– the engine is not turned off by the START-STOP system because the conditions of the function have not been met

Operating conditions

Some conditions are determined by the state of the car's systems and cannot be influenced or recognized. Therefore, the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.

The driver must fulfil the following conditions:

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- ✓ The driving speed was more than 4 km/h after the last stop.

Settings

Automatic activation

› Upon start-up of engine.

› By selecting the driving mode Eco » *page 136, Operation*.

Deactivating/activating the system

› Press the OFF button.

When the system is deactivated, the symbol in the OFF button illuminates.

If a system-related engine switch-off occurs and the system is deactivated, the engine will start.

Troubleshooting

The engine does not switch off when stopping, or it starts before starting up

The system has detected that the engine is running.

Manual gearbox

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine

› Shift into a higher gear before reaching the red area of the rev counter scale.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the gearbox

› Depress the clutch pedal fully.

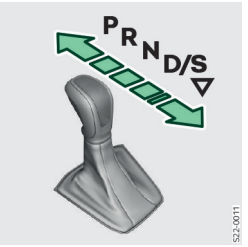
› Remove your hand from the gear lever once you have changed gear.

Engaging reverse gear

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Depress the clutch pedal fully.
3. Move the gear lever to the neutral position.
4. Push the gear lever down.
5. Move it fully to the left.
6. Wait for a moment.
7. Engage reverse gear.

Automatic gearbox

Lever positions



P **Parked vehicle**

The drive wheels are locked.

The **P** position can **only** be set when the vehicle is stationary.

R **Reverse gear**

The **R** position can **only** be set when the vehicle is stationary.

N **Neutral**

There is no transmission of engine power to the wheels.

D/S **Forward drive/sports program**

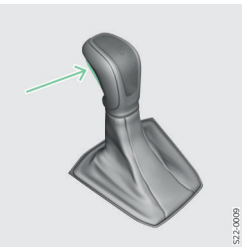
The gear is changed automatically.

In the **S** mode, the gear is changed at higher speeds than in the **D** mode.

▽ **Choosing between D and S (sprung position)**

Moving the selector lever out of the P or N position

lights up – the selector lever is locked



› Depress the brake while pressing the button on the selector lever.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the vehicle moving forwards without warning.

› With the selector lever in the **D/S** or **R** position, or in manual shift mode, secure the vehicle with the brake.

Operation

Starting up

1. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. Start the engine.
3. Press the button on the selector lever and set it to the desired position.

4. Release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal

Maximum acceleration when driving (Kick-down)

› Depress the accelerator pedal fully.

Stopping temporarily (e.g. at a junction)

› Leave the selector lever in the **D/S** position and secure the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Stopping

1. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
3. Press the button on the selector lever and set it to the **P** position.
4. Turn off the engine.

Driving in neutral

If the system detects that no gear is engaged while driving, it automatically switches to the neutral position.

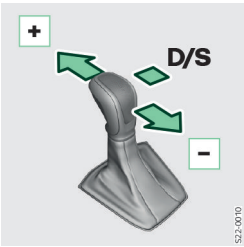
Requirements for driving in neutral:

- ✓ The Eco driving mode is selected.
- ✓ **D** mode is selected.
- ✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is depressed.
- ✓ The driving speed is 20 – 130 km/h.
- ✓ No accessories must be plugged into the towing bracket socket.

Manually changing gear with the selector lever

› To **turn on**, place the selector lever in the **D/S** position to the right.

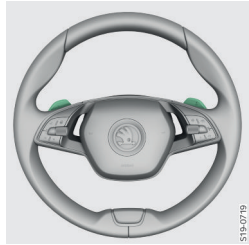
› To **turn off**, place the selector lever back to the **D/S** position.



\+ Change up a gear

– Change down a gear

Manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel



– Change down a gear

\+ Change up a gear

› To **turn on**, press the – button, or +.

› To **turn off**, hold the + button.

If no button is used for certain time, manual shift mode is deactivated automatically.

If there is a risk of over-revving

› The gearbox automatically changes up a gear.

› The transmission prevents downshifting.

Troubleshooting

The selector lever cannot be moved out of the P position in the usual way.

› Manually unblock the selector lever » *page 136*.

Gearbox overheated

illuminates together with ⚠

Message indicating gearbox overheating

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.

illuminates together with ⚠

Message indicating gearbox overheating

1. Do not continue driving! Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.
2. After the indicator light goes out, your journey can continue.
3. If the warning light does not go out, stop driving. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Gearbox malfunction

illuminates together with ⚠

Message indicating gearbox in emergency mode

1. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage as soon as possible.

illuminates together with ⚠

Message indicating a gearbox malfunction

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Recovering a stranded vehicle

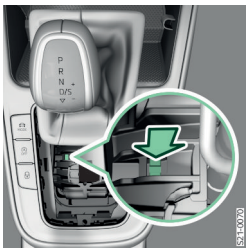
1. If possible, remove the obstacle, e.g. snow.
2. Put underneath the wheels of the driven axle e.g. rubber mats.
3. At low engine speed, move the selector lever smoothly between **D/S** and **R**. The vehicle will start to rock and be easier to free.

Manually releasing an automatic gearbox.

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.



› Insert a flat-head screwdriver or a similar tool into the gap at A.
› Carefully release and lift the gear shift cover.
› Push the foam insert away until the yellow release lever is visible.



› Using the vehicle key, press the release lever while pressing the button in the selector lever.
› Place the selector lever in the **N** position.

Driving modes

Use

Driving modes allow you to tailor the car's handling to your driving style.

Overview

Information about the selected driving mode is shown in the status bar on the Infotainment system screen and on the digital instrument cluster.

Eco mode

The Eco driving mode is suitable for a relaxed driving style and helps to save fuel.

Normal mode

The Normal driving mode is suitable for normal driving style.

Sport mode

The Sport driving mode is suitable for sport driving style.

Individual mode

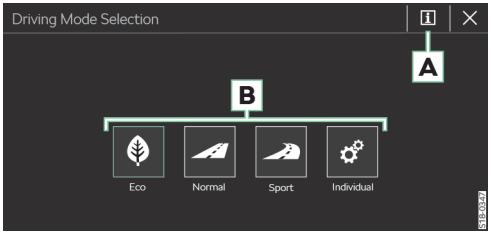
The Individual mode allows you to individually adjust some of the vehicle's systems.

Operation

Selecting driving mode

› Press the MODE button.

The Infotainment system will display the driving mode menu.



A Information on the system settings of the currently selected mode / System settings when Individual mode is selected.

B Driving modes menu

› Press the corresponding B button.

Or:

› Press repeatedly the MODE button.

When the ignition is switched on, the Normal mode is automatically selected for legislative reasons.

Economical driving style

Tips for economical driving

› Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
› Follow the gear changing recommendation on the instrument cluster display.
› Avoid full acceleration and excessive speeds.
› Do not allow the engine to idle for long periods.
› Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine starts.
› Observe the prescribed tyre pressure » page 173.
› Remove unnecessary ballast.
› Remove the roof rack when it is not needed.
› Switch on electric consumers only for as long as necessary.
› Do not leave the windows open while driving.

A more fuel-efficient driving status

In a vehicle with an automatic transmission, if the system detects that a gear doesn't need to be engag-

ed while driving, it automatically shifts to idle. This reduces fuel consumption.

Driving with a trailer

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Driving with a trailer requires extra caution!

ⓘ NOTICE

Frequent trailer journeys put excessive strain on the vehicle, so have it checked even between service checks.

Recommendations for driving with a trailer

- Adjust the tyre pressure of the vehicle for full load operation.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights of the vehicle and the combination as stated in the vehicle's technical documentation (e.g. vehicle registration document, COC document) and on the type plate.
- When driving with a trailer, the actual load of the vehicle and the load distribution in the trailer must be taken into account. A trailer attachment increases the weight on the rear axle of the vehicle and may reduce the weight of the payload.
- Adjust the headlight inclination to match the load on the vehicle. The front of the vehicle with the trailer attached may lift and the lights may dazzle other road users.
- Do not exceed the speed of **100 km/h**.
- If the trailer swerves sideways, reduce the speed by releasing the accelerator pedal. Do not attempt to straighten the vehicle combination by accelerating.
- If you do not have a clear view of the traffic behind the trailer, have additional rear-view mirrors fitted.
- Brake in time. First lightly brake the trailer with the trailer brake, then steadily increase the pressure on the brake pedal. This will eliminate impacts caused by locked trailer wheels when braking.
- Before descending, down shift to take advantage of the engine's braking power.

Load distribution in the vehicle combination

- Secure heavy objects against shifting, preferably close to the trailer axle.
- Carry small and light objects in the luggage compartment.

Permissible trailer weights

The information in the technical documentation of the vehicle takes precedence over the information in the Owner's Manual.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- Do not exceed the permissible trailer load.

Engine type	Gearbox	Permissible braked trailer weight (kg) [a]	Permissible unbraked trailer weight (kg)
1.0 l/70 kW TSI	manual	1000	570
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	manual	1100	580
	automatic	1100	590
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	automatic	1200	610
1.0 l/59 kW MPI	manual	800	560
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	manual	1100	560
	automatic	1100	580

[a] On gradients up to 12 %.

Tow eye and towing

Conditions for towing

- ✓ Technical condition of the vehicle allows towing.
- ✓ Ignition is on.
- ✓ The gear lever is in neutral or the selector lever is in **N**.

Restrictions

› Towing speed up to 50 km/h
› Towing distance up to 50 km

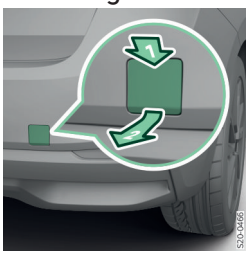
Towing eye

Removing the front cap



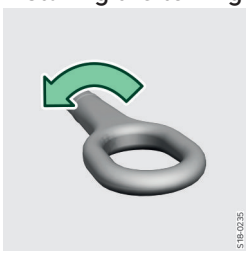
› Press on the cap and remove it.

Removing the rear cap



› Press on the cap and remove it.

Installing the towing eye



1. Screw in the towing eye.
2. Insert the wheel wrench or similar object through the towing eye.
3. Tighten the towing eye.

After towing

1. Unscrew the towing eye.
2. Insert the cover cap.

Towing the vehicle

When towing, observe the country-specific legal regulations.

Towing takes practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the specifics of the towing process.

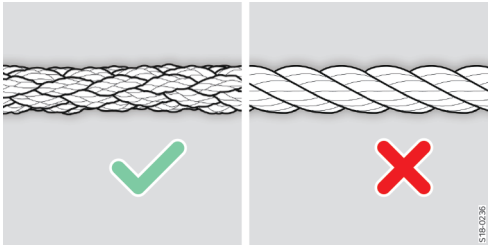
⚠ WARNING

When the ignition is switched off, the brake booster and the power steering are not operational. The steering lock may also engage.

› If the engine cannot be started,switch on the ignition.

⚠ WARNING

› The tow rope must not be twisted.
› Use a braided synthetic fibre rope for towing. Do not use a twisted tow rope.



ⓘ NOTICE

› Always keep the tow rope taut while towing.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the gearbox

› If the gearbox no longer contains oil, the vehicle must only be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or transported on a special breakdown vehicle.
› Vehicles with an automatic transmission must not be towed without the ignition switched on or with the rear axle raised.

Where should the tow rope or the tow bar be secured?

› On the front towing eye
› On the rear towing eye
› On the tow bar fitted from the factory

ⓘ Vehicles fitted with a factory towing bracket do not have a sleeve at the rear for screwing on the towing eye.

Information for the driver of the towing vehicle

1. Drive slowly and smoothly.
2. Only accelerate once the rope is taut.

Information for the driver of the towed vehicle

› Move the gear lever to neutral or the selector lever to the **N** position.

Brakes

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Problems and faults with the brake system can extend the braking distance of the vehicle!

⚠ DANGER
Danger of a functional restriction of the brake booster!
› When braking in a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, depress the clutch pedal.

⚠ DANGER
Risk of the brakes overheating!
› Do not depress the brake pedal unless braking is required.
› If the original front spoiler is damaged, ensure the air supply to the front brakes is guaranteed.

Checking the brake fluid level

Test conditions
✓ Vehicle on a flat surface
✓ Engine off

Checking


The fill level must be within the marked range.

1. If the level is below the **MIN** mark, do not continue.
2. Do not refill.
3. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Low brake fluid is indicated by the instrument cluster illuminating (!). However, we recommend that you regularly check the brake fluid level in the reservoir.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of brake failure!
If the fluid level falls significantly within a short time or drops below the **MIN** mark, there may be a leak in the brake system.
› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Specification
The brake fluid must comply with the VW 501 14 standard. This standard meets the requirements of the FMVSS 116 DOT4 standard.

Replacing
Have the brake fluid replaced by a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of brake failure!
If the brake fluid replacement interval is exceeded, heavy braking may cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system.

Troubleshooting

Brake fluid level too low
(!) illuminated

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Brake system and ABS system fault
(!) illuminates together with (ABS)

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Reduced braking effect
Wet, icy, salt-encrusted or corroded brakes can cause reduced braking performance, vibration and noise.

› Clean the brakes by braking several times if traffic conditions allow it.

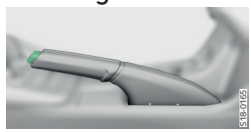
🛈 Prolonged parking and low brake loads contribute to corrosion on the brake discs and contamination of the brake pads.

The brake booster does not work when the engine is off
› Depress the brake pedal more forcefully.

Handbrake

Operation

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!
If the parking brake is not properly released, the braking system will not function properly.
› Release the parking brake fully before driving.

Securing


› Pull the lever up to the stop position.

(P) illuminates.

Releasing
1. Pull the lever up a little and push in the lock button.
2. Press and hold the lock button and lower the lever fully.

Travel assist systems

Braking and stabilising systems

Overview

Stabilisation control (ESC)

ESC helps stabilise the vehicle in borderline situations (e.g. when the vehicle starts to skid). ESC brakes the individual wheels to maintain the direction of travel.

flashes – ESC is engaged

Traction control (ASR)

ASR helps stabilise the vehicle when accelerating or driving on low-grip roads. ASR reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels when they start spinning.

flashes – ASR is engaged

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS helps maintain control of the vehicle during emergency braking. An ABS intervention is signalled by pulsating movements of the brake pedal.

Motor Slip Regulation (MSR)

MSR helps maintain control of the vehicle in the event of a sudden reduction in speed, e.g. on icy roads. If the wheels on the driven axle lock, MSR increases the engine speed. This reduces the engine braking effect and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDS)

EDS helps stabilise the vehicle when driving on road surfaces with varying grip under the individual wheels. EDS brakes the spinning wheel and transmits power to a different drive wheel.

Electronic Differential Lock (XDS+)

XDS+ helps keep the vehicle turning by effectively braking the wheels on the inside of the turn.

Active steering assist (DSR)

DSR helps stabilise the vehicle in a limit situation by indicating to the driver where to turn the steering wheel by a pulse to the steering wheel.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

The HHC system helps with hill starts by braking the vehicle for approximately 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

Operating conditions:

- ✓ The gradient is at least 5 %.
- ✓ The driver's door is closed.

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)

MCB helps decelerate and stabilise the vehicle after a collision with an obstacle. This reduces the risk of further collisions.

Operating conditions:

- ✓ Following a front, side and rear collision of a certain force.
- ✓ The speed at the time of impact exceeded 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, the ESC and other required systems remained functional after the impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not depressed.

Trailer stabilization system (TSA)

TSA helps stabilize the trailer combination If the trailer combination starts to sway, the TSA stabilises it by braking individual wheels of the vehicle.

Operating conditions:

- ✓ The towing bracket is supplied from the factory or purchased from the Škoda Genuine Equipment range.
- ✓ The trailer is connected to the towing bracket socket.
- ✓ The ASR is activated.
- ✓ The driving speed is over 60 km/h.

Settings

Deactivating/activating ASR

› Press the button.

Or:

› Select the following menu from the Infotainment system:

MENU > > >

Or:

CAR > >

When deactivated the instrument cluster illuminates.

After reactivation it goes out.

Deactivating ASR may be helpful in the following situations:

› Driving with snow chains
› Driving in deep snow or on very loose ground
› Starting up a vehicle that is stuck

Troubleshooting

Malfunction, ESC or ASR switched off by the system

illuminated

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the indicator light does not go out after a short distance, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

ABS malfunction

illuminated

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Brake system and ABS system fault

illuminates together with

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Front Assist

Functionality

Front Assist monitors the distance to the vehicle in front of you and warns you if you do not keep a safe distance. In an emergency situation, it helps to avoid a collision by braking.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – failure to keep a safe distance

illuminated – warning if there is a risk of collision

Automatic braking when there is a risk of collision

When there is a risk of collision, will illuminate as a warning. If the driver does not react, the vehicle will automatically apply the brakes.

At speeds up to 30 km/h, the vehicle will start braking without warning.

Automatic braking can be interrupted by pressing the accelerator pedal or moving the steering wheel.

The brake system pressure is increased during automatic braking. The brake pedal cannot be depressed within its normal range.

Operating conditions

✓ ASR is activated.
✓ The driving speed is over 5 km/h.

Function restriction

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
Front Assist does not react to vehicles moving across the road or in the opposite direction.
If the vehicle is approaching an obstacle at a very high speed, the system's response may be delayed.

Limitation or unavailability of the function

Functionality may be limited or unavailable, for example, in the following cases:

› Approximately 30 seconds after staring (indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminated)
› When negotiating a steep curve
› During ESC intervention

Settings

Automatic activation

Front Assist is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation on the instrument cluster screen

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select the *Front Assist* item.

Activating/deactivating in the Infotainment system

In the **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > menu.

Indication of system deactivation on the instrument cluster screen

illuminates together with ⚠

ⓘ Deactivate Front Assist when handling the vehicle on a freight train, ferry, etc.

Troubleshooting

Unavailability of Front Assist

illuminates together with ⚠

1. Clean the front radar sensor.
2. Turn off the engine and start again.
3. If the Front Assist system is still unavailable, check the brake lights of the vehicle or of the attached trailer.
4. If the brake lights are working and the Front Assist system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

There has been an unfounded warning or system intervention

1. Clean the front radar sensor.
2. If the system still does not work properly, deactivate the Front Assist system and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Video – Front Assist

Front Assist - activating

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-fabia4-front-assist

Pedestrian detection

Functionality

Pedestrian detection helps to avoid collisions with pedestrians moving across or along the road by automatic braking.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – danger of collision

Risk of collision at speeds between 5–30 km/h

The system automatically applies the brakes.

Risk of collision at speeds between 30–60 km/h

The system first warns of a collision risk. If the driver does not react, the vehicle will automatically apply the brakes.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Front Assist is activated.
- ✓ The driving speed is 5 – 60 km/h.

Speed limiter

Functionality

The speed limiter regulates the maximum speed of the vehicle to a set speed limit.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

Illuminated – speed limiter is activated

illuminated – cruise control is regulating the speed

flashing – the set limit is exceeded

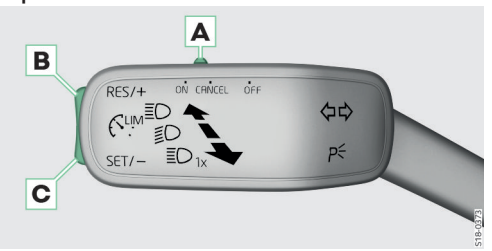
When cruise control starts, the set speed limit is displayed.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is over 30 km/h.

Operation

Option without cruise control



A **ON** Activating the cruise control (no cruise control is in operation)

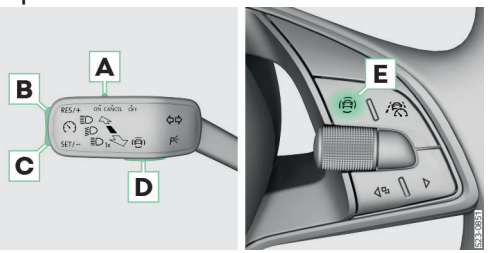
OFF Deactivating the limiter

CANCEL Interrupting the cruise control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resuming control[1] / Increasing the limit

C **SET/-** Starting regulating current speed / Decreasing the limit

Option with cruise control



A **ON** Activating cruise control (condition for subsequent activation of the limiter)

To **activate the speed limiter**, press the **D** or **E** button.

OFF Deactivating the limiter

CANCEL Interrupting the cruise control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resuming control[1] / Increasing the limit

C **SET/-** Starting regulating current speed / Decreasing the limit

D Depending on vehicle equipment:

[1] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

Switching between the cruise control and the speed limiter

Or:

Displaying the assist systems menu – switch between cruise control and speed limiter

Switching to cruise control interrupts the regulation.

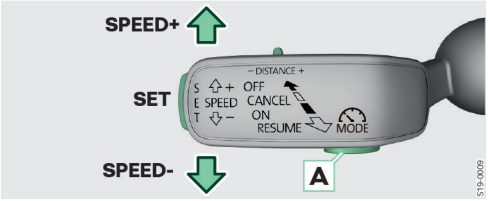
Changing the speed limit using the B button and C

Pressing in **1 km/h** increments

Holding in **10 km/h** increments

Option with ACC





ON Activating ACC (condition for subsequent activation of the limiter). To activate the speed limiter, press the A button.

RESUME Resuming control[1] / Increasing the limit in 1 km/h increments (spring-loaded position)

CANCEL Interrupting control (sprung position)

OFF Deactivating the limiter

SPEED + Increasing the speed limit in 10 km/h increments

SPEED – Decreasing the speed limit in 10 km/h increments

SET Starting control / Decreasing the speed in 1 km/h increments

A Switching between the ACC and speed limiter (switching to cruise control interrupts the regulation).

Exceeding the limit

› Depress the accelerator pedal **all the way down**.

When you slow down below the set limit, the control will continue.

Troubleshooting

Speed limiter fault

LIM illuminated

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system still does not work, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Cruise control system

What you should be mindful of

Do not use CCS in the following cases:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.
› The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.
› The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.
› The vehicle is passing through a traffic construction.

Functionality

The cruise control system maintains the set speed without the need to depress the accelerator pedal.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the cruise control system starting unintentionally

› Deactivate cruise control after use.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – cruise control is active

illuminated – cruise control is regulating the speed

When cruise control starts, the set speed is displayed.

OFF illuminated – cruise control is deactivated

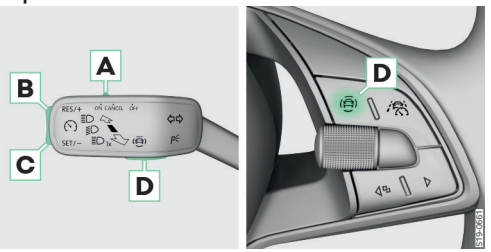
Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is over 20 km/h.

[1] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

Operation

Operation with the lever



A **ON** Activating the cruise control (no cruise control is in operation)

OFF Deactivating the cruise control

CANCEL Interrupting the cruise control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resuming the cruise control [1] / Increasing speed limit

C **SET/-** Starting the cruise control with current speed / Reducing speed limit

D Displaying the assist systems menu – switch between cruise control and speed limiter

Temporary acceleration

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Interrupting cruise control

› After the brake pedal is depressed

› After ESC intervention

Troubleshooting

Cruise control system fault

illuminated

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the cruise control system is still unavailable, check the brake lights of the vehicle or of the attached trailer.
3. If the brake lights are working and the cruise control system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

What you should be mindful of

Do not use the ACC system in the following cases:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.

› The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.

› The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.

› The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.

› The vehicle is driving in a lane that is too narrow.

› The vehicle is passing through a traffic construction.

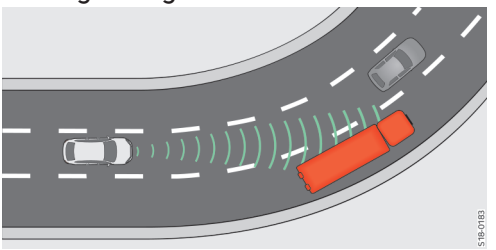
⚠ WARNING

› In the following situations, increase your attention and be prepared to intervene.

Regulating the speed according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane

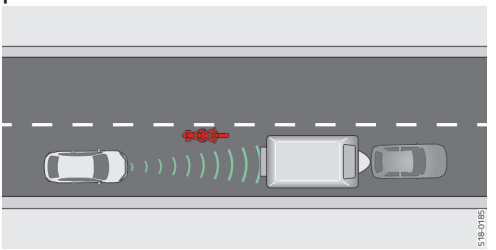
If your vehicle is travelling faster than the vehicle in the adjacent lane on the driver's side at speeds above 80 km/h, your vehicle's speed may be regulated according to this vehicle.

Passing through a corner



A vehicle in the adjacent lane may enter the monitored area when going around a corner. Your vehicle's speed will be regulated according to this car.

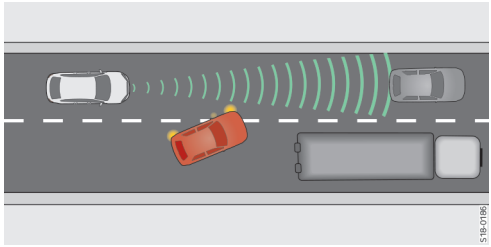
Narrow vehicle or a vehicle travelling in parallel



ACC will only detect a narrow vehicle or a vehicle travelling in parallel in the adjacent lane when it enters the monitoring area.

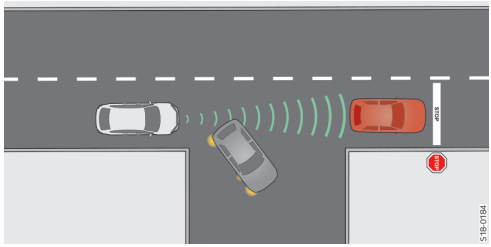
[1] If no speed is set, the current speed is adopted.

Other vehicles changing lanes



The ACC system may not be able to detect in time a vehicle that changes lanes just in front of you.

A stationary vehicle



Applies to vehicles with Travel Assist feature:

If a vehicle in front of you turns and another vehicle is in front of that vehicle, the ACC system **may not react** to this stationary vehicle.

Applies to vehicles without Travel Assist feature:

If a vehicle in front of you turns and another vehicle is in front of that vehicle, theACC system **does not react** to the stationary vehicle.

Vehicles with special loads or special extensions

Cargo or extensions that protrude outside the vehicle may not be detected by the ACC system.

Functionality

ACC speed control

ACC maintains the set speed. If your vehicle approaches the vehicle in front of you, the ACC will automatically maintain the set distance.

Maintaining the set speed and distance is referred to as **control**.

⚠ WARNING

ACC does not react to objects moving across the road or in the opposite direction.

ⓘ ACC is designed primarily for driving on the motorway.

pACC (Predictive adaptive cruise control)

pACC is an extension system of ACC.

pACC adjusts speed according to detected speed limits and road conditions, such as curves, junctions or roundabouts.

The system uses the following resources to evaluate the situation:

- Navigation data
- Traffic sign recognition
- Sensors, radars and cameras

⚠ WARNING

pACC does not react to level crossings.

Speed range

ACC allows you to adjust the speed according to the car's equipment within a range of 20– 210 km/h.

If you activate the control on a car with an automatic transmission at a speed lower than 20 km/h, the speed is automatically increased to 20 km/h or regulated according to the speed of the car in front of you.

Level of distance

You can set the distance to the car in front of you in 5 different levels.

⚠ WARNING

- Keep the minimum distance in accordance with the laws in force in your country.
- Always set a greater distance when visibility is reduced.

START-STOP system with automatic gearbox

A vehicle with an automatic gearbox can use ACC to slow to a stop and start again. If the stop is longer, the screen will instruct you to press the brake pedal.

› Keep the brake pedal depressed until the car in front of you starts moving.

If you do not depress the brake pedal, the control is interrupted.

Overtaking

If your vehicle crosses into the overtaking lane and there is no vehicle in front of you, ACC will accelerate to the set speed.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

illuminated – ACC is active

illuminated – cruise control is regulating the speed

When cruise control is activated, the set speed is displayed.

illuminated – ACC is not braking sufficiently

› Depress the brake pedal.

illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed in accordance with the permitted speed limit

illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the approaching roundabout.

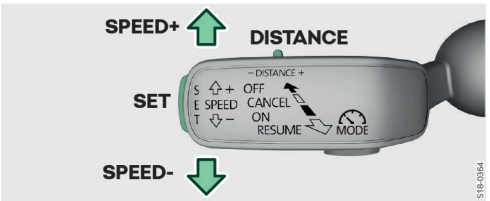
illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the approaching junction

illuminated – ACC is regulating the vehicle's speed based on the progress of the journey

Operation

Operation with the lever





ON Activating ACC (no cruise control is in operation)

RESUME Starting or resuming control / Increasing speed in 1 km/h increments (sprung position)

CANCEL Interrupting control (sprung position)

OFF ACC deactivation

SPEED + Increasing the speed in 10 km/h steps

SPEED – Decreasing the speed in 10 km/h steps

DISTANCE Setting the distance level

SET Starting control / Decreasing the speed in 1 km/h increments

Starting the current speed control

› Tap **SET**.

Or:

› If no speed is stored in memory, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

Resuming the control

› If no speed is stored in memory, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

The vehicle will be regulated at the set speed. The set speed is shown on the instrument cluster display.

Interrupting cruise control

› When the brake pedal is depressed while driving
› When the clutch pedal is depressed for a long time
› After ESC intervention
› After ASR deactivation

Setting the distance level

› Move the switch **DISTANCE** to the sprung position **–** or **+**.



The display will show A line indicating change of distance.

› Use the **DISTANCE** switch to set the desired distance level.

Temporary acceleration

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

The car accelerates, the control is temporarily interrupted. When the accelerator pedal is released, control is restored.

Settings

Activating/deactivating and setting

In the **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > menu.

› *Driving mode:* – setting the vehicle acceleration when driving with ACC (in vehicles with a selection of driving modes, this setting is made by » page 136)
› *Last distance selected* – turning on/off of the last selected distance level
› *Distance:* – setting the default distance from the vehicle in front of you
› *Road layout preview* – switching cruise control on/off based on the course of the journey (e.g. slowing down before a corner)
› *Speed limit preview* – switching cruise control on/off in accordance with the speed limit

Troubleshooting

Unavailability of ACC

illuminates together with ⚠

1. Clean the front radar sensor.
2. Turn off the engine and start again.
3. If the ACC system is still unavailable, check the brake lights of the vehicle or of the attached trailer.
4. If the brake lights are working and the ACC system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Video – Adaptive Cruise Control ACC

ACC - setting

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-fabia4-acc

Lane Assist – assistant for keeping your lane

Use

Lane Assist helps keeping the vehicle in the lane. It is guided by demarcation lines, which may be boundary lines, road edges or objects such as kerbs or crash barrier.

The system is designed primarily for driving on the motorway

Functionality

If the vehicle approaches the demarcation line, the system will turn the steering wheel in the direction away from the demarcation line. The steering intervention can be manually corrected.

Vehicles without the Side Assist system: The system will not intervene when changing lanes with the turn signal on.

Vehicles with the Side Assist system: When changing lanes, Side Assist warns of an approaching vehicle by means of the ■ indicator light in the exterior mirror housing. The system will intervene even if the indicator light is on.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen

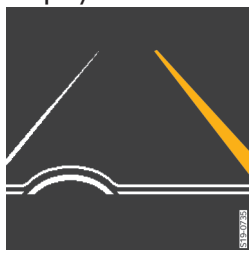
Illuminated – the system is activated and prepared to intervene

illuminated – the system is intervening

Illuminated – the system is activated and not prepared to intervene

illuminated – system is deactivated

Display view



Highlighted right bar: the system intervenes when the vehicle is approaching the demarcation line on the right.

Steering wheel vibration warning

The steering wheel vibrates in the following situations:

- The system is unable to keep the vehicle in the lane.
- *Vehicles without the Side Assist system:* The vehicle crosses the demarcation line without the indicator lights on.
- *Vehicles with the Side Assist system:* The vehicle crosses the demarcation line without the indicator lights on. If Side Assist warns of an approaching vehicle with the ■ indicator light in the exterior mirror housing, the steering wheel will vibrate even if the indicator light is on.
- If the steering wheel vibrates, correct the steering control.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is over 65 km/h.
- ✓ The demarcation lines are clearly visible.

Function restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

- The sensor does not have a view over an obstacle, through dirty glass or there is a vehicle in front of you.
- Unfavourable weather conditions.
- The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.
- The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.
- The vehicle is driving in a lane that is too narrow.
- The vehicle is passing through a traffic construction.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Some objects or features on the roadway can be identified as demarcation lines.

- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to correct steering intervention.

Settings

Automatic activation

Lane Assist is **always** activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation on the instrument cluster display

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select the *Lane Assist* item.

Activating/deactivating in the Infotainment system

In the **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > menu.

Activating/deactivating the steering wheel vibrations

In the **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > menu in the Infotainment system.

After you switch off the ignition, the last steering wheel vibration setting is automatically saved.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

illuminated

1. Clean the windscreen in the area of the sensor.
2. Switch off the engine and restart it after a while.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Video – Lane Assist Lane Assist

Lane Assist - activating

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-fabia4-lane-assist

Travel Assist

Use

Travel Assist helps keep the vehicle in its lane while regulating its speed and distance from the vehicle in front of you.

Functionality

Travel Assist uses the Lane Assist a ACC functions.

Travel Assist is designed primarily for driving on the motorway.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to take over driving.

› Follow the instructions in the description of the Lane Assist and ACC functions.

Status display on the instrument cluster display

illuminated – the system is activated, speed control and adaptive lane guidance are in progress

Illuminated – the system is activated, speed control is in progress

illuminated – the system is activated, adaptive lane guidance is in progress

illuminated – you have let go of the steering wheel, take over steering

illuminated – you have let go of the steering wheel, take over steering immediately

If you do not respond to the warning, the system will automatically shut down.

Adaptive lane guidance

This function maintains the driver's selected position within the lane.

Operating conditions

- ✓ ACC is activated.
- ✓ Driving speed is max. 210 km/h.
- ✓ The demarcation lines are clearly visible.
- ✓ On a vehicle with manual gears, the driving speed is higher than 30 km/h.

Function restriction

The Travel Assist system is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for driving safely.

Functionality may be limited or unavailable, for example, in the following cases:

› The sensor does not have a view over an obstacle, through dirty glass or there is a vehicle in front of you.
› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The vehicle is going around a sharp corner.
› The vehicle is driving on an inclined roadway or on a rutted track.
› The vehicle is driving in a lane that is too narrow.

In addition to these limitations, observe the ACC limitations » *page 144*.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Some objects or features on the roadway can be identified as demarcation lines.

› Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to correct steering intervention.

Settings

Activating

› Put the ACC selector lever to **RESUME** position.

Or:

› Press **SET** on the ACC control lever.

The current speed control and adaptive lane guidance are activated.

Switching between Travel Assist and ACC

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel

ⓘ After you switch off the ignition, the last steering wheel vibration setting is automatically saved.

Deactivation

› Depress the brake pedal.

Or:

› Put the ACC selector lever to **CANCEL** position or **OFF** » page 146.

ⓘ Other settings are identical to ACC and Lane Assist.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

illuminated

1. Follow the troubleshooting instructions for Lane Assist » page 148 and ACC » page 146.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Side Assist – lane change system

Use

Using optical signals in the wing mirror, the system warns of vehicles that may pose danger when changing lanes.

Functionality

The system monitors the area next to and behind your vehicle.

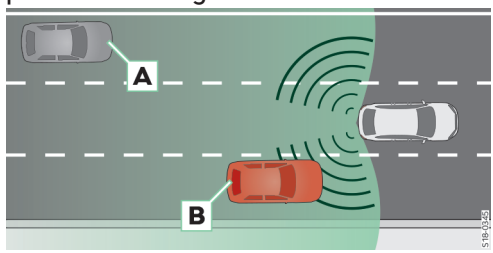
The system warns of an approaching car by means of a warning light ■ in the external mirror housing on the side where the car is detected.

ⓘ The indicator light brightness is adjusted automatically based on the ambient light conditions.

⚠ WARNING

In strong sunlight, the indicator light may be hard to see.

Driving situations in which the system provides warning



Your vehicle is being overtaken by vehicle **A**. The faster the **A** vehicle is approaching, the sooner the warning light starts to warn you.

The **B** vehicle is being overtaken by your vehicle at a speed of no more than 10 km/h higher. The warning light does not indicate if you are overtaking faster than this.

The indicator light

■ **illuminated** – there is another vehicle behind you

■ **flashing** – there is another vehicle behind you and on the same side, the direction light is on.

On vehicles with the Lane Assist system, the warning light also flashes if your vehicle crosses the line of demarcation towards the approaching vehicle. The system will also vibrate the steering wheel.

The Lane Assist system with steering wheel vibration must be activated and the line of demarcation between the vehicles must be detected.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is over 15 km/h.

✓ No accessories are connected to the towing bracket socket.

Function restriction

The system does not detect the lane width. Therefore, in the following cases, for example, it may warn you of a vehicle in a further lane:

› A vehicle is driving on a roadway with narrow lanes or on the edge of the lane.

› The vehicle is negotiating a bend.

The system may warn of objects along the road, such as high barriers, noise barriers or tunnel walls.

In the following cases, the system may not warn of a vehicle or may warn incorrectly:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.

› The vehicle is approaching at a very high speed.

› The vehicle is passing through a sharp curve or roundabout.

› The vehicle is travelling on an unpaved or slippery surface.

Settings

On the instrument cluster display
In the *Assistants* menu.

In the Infotainment system
In the **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > menu.

Troubleshooting

Side Assist system malfunction
illuminated
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Clean the rear radar sensor.
2. Turn off the engine and start again.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Video – Lane change system Side Assist
Side Assist - activating
https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-fabia4-side-assist

Traffic sign recognition

Use
Traffic sign recognition shows traffic signs on the instrument cluster screen. It also warns you when you are speeding.

⚠ WARNING
The following always has priority over the traffic signs shown in the display:
› Traffic signs in the traveled route section
› A speed limit stipulated by law, which is not implemented by any traffic signs in the route section traveled through

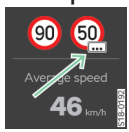
Functionality

Traffic signs displayed
› Speed limit
› No overtaking
› No entry – one-way traffic
› Additional traffic signs, e.g. speed limit on wet roads

Driving with a trailer
If a trailer or other accessory is connected to the towing bracket, the traffic signs applicable to driving with a trailer are also displayed.

Driving on a road without a speed limit
If you are on a road without a speed limit, the traffic sign will appear on the screen.

Example of traffic sign display


Example of additional display


An example where multiple traffic signs are detected simultaneously.

ⓘ The speedometer will simultaneously display a red indicator showing the speed limit.

Status display on the instrument cluster screen
lights up – unavailable map data

OFF lights up – the set warning is not in accordance with the legislation

Speed units
The speed data on the displayed traffic signs are in the units valid in the respective country.

For example, ⑨⓪ can mean 30 km/h or 30 mph, depending on the country.

Restrictions
The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

› The sensor is dazzled by the sun or the lights of oncoming traffic.
› The sensor does not have a view over an obstacle or a vehicle in front of you.
› Unfavourable weather conditions.
› The vehicle is travelling at high speed.
› Traffic signs are obscured, damaged or not up to standard.
› Traffic signs are mounted on lighted shields with flashing lights.
› Navigation map data is out of date or unavailable.

Settings

Automatic activation
When the ignition is switched on, the system is activated automatically to a setting that complies with legislation.

Activation/deactivation on the instrument cluster screen

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel
2. Select *Speed warning*.

Activation/deactivation and setting of the speed warning in the Infotainment system

In the **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > menu.

- *Speed warning:*
  - › *Active*
  - › *Speed warning:* – setting a warning when speeding
  - › *Warning threshold* – increasing the speed limit for the speed warning[1)]
  - › *Info sound when changing the maximum speed*

Activation/deactivation and setting of trailer recognition in the Infotainment system

In the **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > menu.

- *Trailer recognition*
  - › *Active* – deactivating/activating the display of traffic signs valid for driving with a trailer
  - › *Warning when exceeding* – setting maximum speed for driving with a trailer

Troubleshooting

Malfunction of Dynamic Road Sign Display

illuminates together with ⚠
Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Video – Dynamic Road Sign Display

Traffic sign recognition – how it works
https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-fabia4-traffic-sign-recognition

Driver Alert fatigue detection

Functionality

The Fatigue detection assistant evaluates the vehicle's handling. If it detects signs of driver fatigue, it will recommend a break and the message will light up on the instrument cluster display.

⚠ WARNING

The system does not warn if you fall into a microsleep.

Resetting the break recommendation

The break recommendation is reset in the following cases:

- › Stopping and switching off the ignition
- › Stopping, unbuckling the seat belt and opening the driver's door
- › Stopping for more than 15 minutes

ⓘ In some situations, the system may recommend a break incorrectly.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is over 60 km/h.

Settings

Activation/deactivation, setting sensitivity

In the **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > menu in the Infotainment system.

Troubleshooting

Malfunction of fatigue detection

illuminates together with ⚠

Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

---

1) *Standard* means increase in speed limit approximately by 1 km/h and 3 % of the permissible speed.

Parking assistance systems

Park Pilot parking aid

Functionality

When an obstacle is detected, a graphic warning is displayed on the Infotainment system screen and an acoustic signal sounds.

The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the distance decreases. At a distance of less than 30 cm, an uninterrupted tone is emitted.

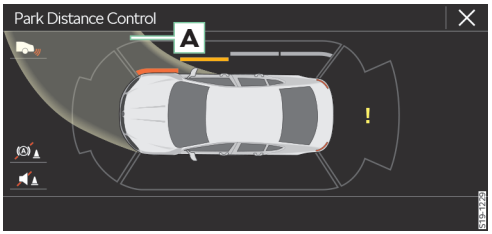
Automatic emergency braking

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system triggers automatic emergency braking at speeds below 8 km/h to minimise the consequences of a collision.

The automatic emergency braking can be activated and deactivated on the Infotainment system screen.

Display

The range of scanned areas varies depending on the vehicle's equipment.



A The driving path that the vehicle will be travelling with the current steering wheel position

Switching off/on the audible alarm

One-off deactivation/activation of automatic braking

Switching to reversing camera view

! System fault

Obstacle at a distance smaller than 30 centimetres

Obstacle at a distance greater than 30 centimetres

Obstacle outside the driving path

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is below 15 km/h.

✓ No accessories are connected to the towing device socket.

Switching on/off

Switching on

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P button under the Infotainment system.

Automatic activation when driving forward

When approaching an obstacle at speeds below 10 km/h.

Automatic braking is not activated during automatic activation.

Switching off

› Disengage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P button under the Infotainment system.

Automatic deactivation

The driving speed is over 15 km/h.

Function restriction

In the following cases, the system may not issue an obstacle warning, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.

› The detected obstacles moving.

› Sensor signals are not reflected by the surface of the obstacles.

› The obstacle is very small, e.g. a stone or a pillar.

Settings

The function can be set in the following menu of the Infotainment system:

CAR > > P

Or:

MENU > > > P

Troubleshooting

After switching on, the alarm sounds for 3 seconds, but there is no obstacle in the vicinity of the vehicle

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

After switching on, the P symbol in the button flashes

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

After switching on, not all scanned areas appear on the Infotainment system display

1. Move the vehicle forward or backward a few metres.
2. If the scanned areas are still not displayed, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Rear view camera

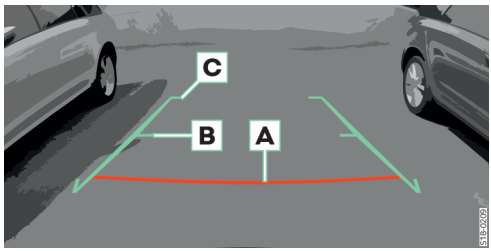
Functionality

When reversing, the Infotainment screen will show the area behind the vehicle with orientation lines.

ⓘ The camera is equipped with a washer. Spraying is done automatically together with the rear window spraying.

Orientation lines and function buttons

Orientation lines



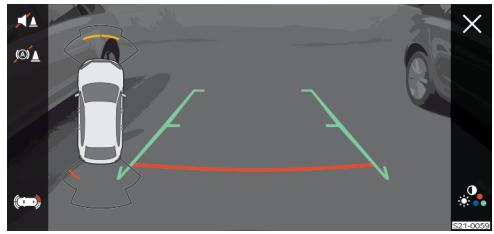
A Distance about 40 cm

B Distance about 100 cm

C Distance about 200 cm

The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function buttons



Setting the brightness, contrast and colour of the screen

× Turning off displaying the area behind the vehicle

Turning the parking aid audible alarm off/on

One-off deactivation/activation of automatic braking

◀/▶ Turning the parking aid preview off/on (the button appears when you move your hand close to the screen)

Full parking aid screen

Operating conditions

✓ Boot lid closed

✓ Ignition on

✓ The driving speed is below 15 km/h

Operation

Switching on

› Engage reverse gear.

Switching off

› Disengage reverse gear.

Restrictions

The camera image is distorted compared to the real-life view. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items may not be displayed properly on the screen, including narrow columns, wire mesh fences, grids or road bumps.

Rear Traffic Alert

Functionality

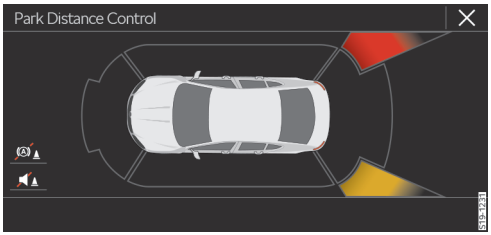


Rear Traffic Alert warns you of approaching vehicles when reversing.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system triggers automatic emergency braking at speeds below 10 km/h to minimise the consequences of a collision.

Vehicles with the Parking Aid system

A graphic warning will be displayed on the Infotainment system screen when a vehicle is detected approaching in the area behind your vehicle. A continuous audible signal sounds when reversing.



■ Vehicle in collision zone – risk of collision!

■ Vehicle approaching

Vehicles without the Parking Aid system

If a vehicle is detected approaching in the area behind your vehicle, the instrument cluster display will instruct the driver to keep an eye on the traffic behind. An audible signal will sound at the same time.

Operating conditions

✓ No accessories are plugged into the towing device socket.

Function restriction

In the following cases, the system may not alert you to an approaching object or may alert you incorrectly:

› Unfavourable weather conditions.

› The sensors do not have a clear view over an obstacle.

› The object is approaching at a very high speed.

⚠ WARNING

The system may not alert you to people behind the car.

Settings

Activation/deactivation on the instrument cluster display

In the *Assistants* menu.

Activating/deactivating in the Infotainment system

In the following menu:

CAR > ⚙ > P

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > ⚙ > P

Troubleshooting

Rear Traffic Alert malfunction

illuminated

Notification of unavailability or restricted functionality

1. Clean the rear radar sensor.
2. Turn off the engine and start again.
3. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Park steering assistant

Usage

Park Assist helps drivers park in parallel and perpendicular parking places and to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

Functionality

The system looks for a parking space and only takes over the steering during the parking procedure or when leaving a parking place. The driver operates the pedals and the shift lever/gear selector.

The system displays information and notes on the instrument cluster display.

If the system detects a risk of collision, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is lower than 7 km/h.

✓ The ASR is activated and there is no intervention.

✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.

✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Operation

Switching on/off

› Press the P button.

When the system is switched on, the symbol P in the button lights up.

Selecting the parking side

The system automatically searches for a parking space on the passenger side.

› To search for a parking space on the driver's side, switch on the direction indicator for that side.

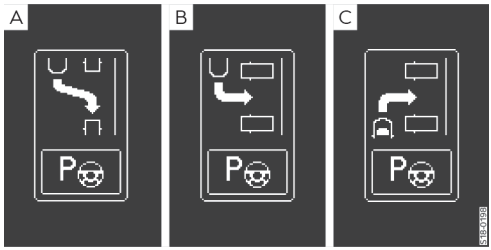
Searching for a parking space

› Drive along the line of parked cars at a distance of 0.5–1.5 m.
› When looking for a perpendicular parking space, drive at a speed of less than 20 km/h.
› When looking for a parallel parking space, drive at a speed of less than 40 km/h.

If the symbol (km/h) appears on the screen, reduce the speed. If the system finds a parking space, the screen will show the recommended parking mode.

Changing the parking mode

Once a parking space has been found, a menu of parking modes may appear on the screen.



A Rear parking in a parallel parking space

B Rear parking in a perpendicular parking space

C Front parking in a perpendicular parking space

The parking mode can be changed by tapping the P button.

Tapping the P button again will switch the system off.

› To return to the originally recommended parking mode, tap the P button again.

Before the parking manoeuvre

1. Once you have found a parking space, stop and drive backwards or forwards following the arrow in the instrument cluster screen.
2. Let go of the steering wheel when the steering intervention message appears. The system will take control of the steering wheel.

Parking manoeuvre

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.
› Only operate the pedals and the shift / selector lever.

1. Pay attention to your surroundings and drive backwards or forwards according to the arrow on the screen.
2. Stop the vehicle when the symbol appears in the screen and the horn sounds. The steering wheel will turn to the required position. The symbol will go out.
3. Drive backwards or forwards according to the arrow on the screen.

When the parking manoeuvre has been completed, the corresponding message will be displayed and an acoustic signal will sound.

You can end the parking manoeuvre at any time by tapping the P button.

ⓘ If you have partially pulled forward into a suitable perpendicular parking space, press the P button and the system will complete the parking manoeuvre.

Leaving a parallel parking space

1. Press the P button.
2. Follow the instructions on the screen.

Automatic speed reduction

If the vehicle exceeds the speed of 7 km/h during a parking manoeuvre, the system will reduce the speed.

If the vehicle exceeds the speed of 7 km/h for a second time, the parking manoeuvre is terminated.

Function restriction

If the parking space is too small, it is not possible to use the Park Assist to initiate a parking manoeuvre. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

Do not use the Park Assist in the following cases:

› The vehicle is moving on unpaved or slippery surfaces.
› Snow chains or a spare wheel are mounted on the vehicle.
› If the system offers an inappropriate parking space for parking.
› The overhang angle for parking in the parking space is too large.

Troubleshooting

System unavailability message

1. Turn off the engine and start again.
2. If the system is still unavailable, seek the assistance from a specialist garage.

Incorrect final position of the vehicle in the parking space

The correct parking position of the vehicle depends on the circumference of the wheels. If the wheels are replaced within the dimensions approved by Škoda Auto, have the system re-adjusted by a specialist garage.

Video - Parking assistant

Parking assistant - operation

https://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-fabia4-park-assist

Engine, exhaust system and fuel

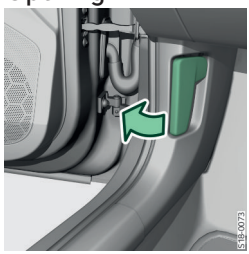
Bonnet

Opening the bonnet

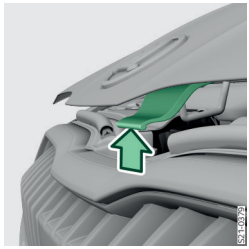
Before opening

1. Make sure the windscreen wiper arms are folded down onto the windscreen.
2. Keep away from the engine compartment.

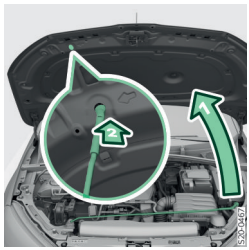
Opening



› Pull the release lever underneath the dashboard.



› Release the lock.



› Open the bonnet.
› Remove the bonnet stay from the holder and insert the end of the stay into the opening in the bonnet.

Closing

1. Lift the bonnet.
2. Unhook the bonnet stay and insert it into the holder.
3. Fold the bonnet down and release it from a height of 20 cm.
4. Check that the bonnet is closed.

NOTICE

› Do not press down on an unclosed bonnet.
› Open and close the flap again.

Engine oil

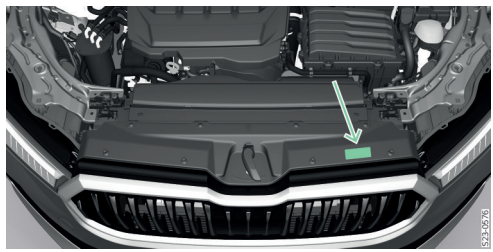
Specification



Engine oil sticker

A Engine oil specifications
B Engine oil viscosity

The engine oil sticker is located at the front of the engine compartment.



If the engine oil needs to be topped up, use the oil indicated on the sticker at the front of the engine compartment.

When using the prescribed oil, the level can be adjusted as often as required.

If the engine oil label on your car is missing, you can get information on the prescribed engine oil car from a specialist garage.

In an emergency

If engine oil of the prescribed specification is not available, you can once add until the next scheduled

oil change a **maximum** of **0.5 l** of engine oil with the following specifications:

› VW 504 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4, ILSAC GF-6A and API SP. You can use engine oil of any viscosity.

Škoda Auto recommends that the **oil change** is then carried out by a specialist garage » page 5.

Checking the fill level and topping up

Depending on the driving style and operating conditions, the engine may consume up to 0.5 l/ 1000 km Consumption may be higher over the first 5,000 km.

› Regularly check the oil level.

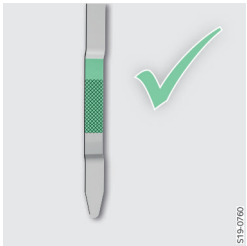
Conditions for inspection and topping up

✓ Vehicle on a flat surface

✓ Engine switched off, at operating temperature

Checking the fill level

1. Wait at least 2 minutes for the oil to flow into the oil sump.
2. Remove the dipstick and wipe with a clean cloth.
3. Insert the dipstick as far as it will go and pull it out again.
4. Read the oil level and push the dipstick back in again.



› The oil level must be within the marked range.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› The oil level must not be outside the marked range.

› If the oil level is **below** the marked area, do not continue driving, stop the engine, top up the engine oil or seek assistance from a specialist garage.

› If the oil level is **above** the marked area, do not continue driving, stop the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

› Do not use any oil additives.

Refuelling

1. Unscrew the cover of the engine oil filler opening.
2. Top up the oil to the correct specification » page 157 in 0.5 litre portions.
3. Check the oil level.
4. Screw on the cover of the engine oil filler opening.

ⓘ NOTICE

Škoda Auto recommends using approved engine oils in accordance with the relevant VW standard. The use of engine oils that do not comply with this standard could damage the engine.

ⓘ Škoda Auto recommends engine oils from the Škoda Genuine Parts product range.

Replacing

Škoda Auto recommends that the **oil change** is carried out by a specialist garage » page 5.

Troubleshooting

Engine oil pressure too low

 flashes, simultaneously illuminates ⚠

› Check the engine oil level » page 158.

The oil level is OK, the warning light continues to flash:

› Stop the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level too low

 illuminates together with ⚠

Message indicates required engine oil top up.

› Check the engine oil level, top up with oil if required » page 158.

Engine oil level too high

 illuminates together with ⚠

Message indicates the need to reduce the engine oil level.

› Check the engine oil level » page 158.

Engine oil level too high.

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level sensor malfunction

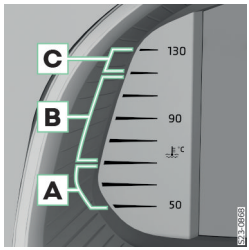
 illuminates together with ⚠

Message regarding the engine oil sensor.

1. You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Coolant

Coolant temperature gauge



A Low temperature
› Avoid high engine speed.
B Operating temperature
C High temperature

Checking the fill level and topping up

Test conditions

✓ Vehicle on a flat surface
✓ Engine switched off and cold

Checking the fill level



The fill level must be within the marked range.

› If the level is below the **MIN** mark, top up the coolant.

NOTICE

Danger of damage to the engine compartment!

› Do not top up the coolant above the marked area. The coolant could be forced out of the cooling system when heated.

NOTICE

There must be a small quantity of coolant in the tank.

› Do not add coolant when the tank is empty.
› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Refuelling

CAUTION

Risk of scalding!

The cooling system is pressurised.

› Do not open the cap of the coolant expansion tank while the engine is warm. Let the engine cool down.

1. Place a wipe on the lid of the tank and carefully unscrew the lid.
2. Refill with coolant with the correct specification.
3. Screw on the cap until it clicks into place.

Specification

Use the G12evo (TL 774 L) coolant to top up.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine!

Adding coolant that does not conform to the correct specification can reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.

Troubleshooting

Coolant level too low

illuminates together with ⚠

Message indicates the required coolant check.

› Check the coolant level » page 159.

If the coolant level is OK:

› Check or change the radiator fan fuse » page 166, Replacing a fuse.

If the fuse is OK but the indicator light lights up again:

› Do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

illuminates together with ⚠

Report indicates engine overheating.

1. Do not continue driving.
2. Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
3. After the indicator light goes out, your journey can continue.

Engine fault

illuminates together with ⚠

1. Do not continue driving!
2. Stop the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

There is no coolant of the correct specification available

1. Top up with distilled or demineralised water.
2. Have the correct coolant mixing ratio corrected by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Another substance was used for topping up, other than distilled or demineralised water:

› Have the coolant changed by a specialist garage.

It is not possible to top up with a sufficient amount of coolant

1. Do not continue driving.

2. Stop the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

There is a loss of coolant

› Top up the coolant and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine electronics

Troubleshooting

Fault in the engine control system

EPC illuminated

The vehicle can be driven in emergency mode; a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Particulate filter

Troubleshooting

Clogged particulate filter

illuminates together with ⚠

› Carry out the filter cleaning procedure » page 160.

If the indicator light illuminates, you must count with increased fuel consumption, reduced engine power and unavailable START-STOP function.

Filter cleaning

Cleaning condition

✓ The vehicle engine is at the operating temperature.

✓ For vehicles with a manual gearbox follow the gear changing recommendation on the instrument cluster screen.

The procedure for vehicles with a petrol engine

1. Drive at a minimum speed of 80 km/h with the engine speed ranging from 3,000 to 5,000/min.
2. Release the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle move with a gear engaged for several seconds.
3. Repeat the procedure several times.

If the filter has been cleaned up, the indicator light goes out.

If the indicator light does not go out within 30 minutes, the filter has not been cleaned.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Exhaust gas control system

Troubleshooting

Emission control system fault

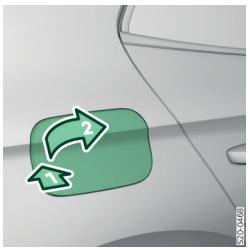
illuminated

The vehicle can be driven in emergency mode; a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Fuel filler flap

Opening the fuel filler flap



› Press the flap and open it.

Petrol

What you should be mindful of

⚠ DANGER

Risk of death!
Fuel and fuel vapours are explosive.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› **Never run the fuel tank completely empty.**

› If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for its use, please contact a Škoda Partner. They can tell you whether a suitable fuel is available in that particular country.

To ensure that the fuel system functions properly, we recommend that you use up the contents of the petrol tank every 6 months until the warning light comes on.

Regulations

Standards

Petrol must comply with the EN 228 European standard (in Russia it is GOST 32513-2013).

Use only **unleaded petrol** with the maximum bioethanol content specified on the label on the inside of the fuel filler cap.

⚿ It is recommended to use petrol with additives from petrol pump dispensers at petrol stations.

Octane number

Use petrol with the octane number specified for your vehicle.

Petrol with a **higher octane number** than that specified for your vehicle can be used without restriction.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

- When petrol with an octane number lower than that specified is used, only continue driving at mid-range engine speeds and with minimal strain on the engine.
- Refuel using petrol of the specified octane number as soon as possible.
- Do not use petrol with an octane number **lower** than **91**.

The specified petrol is RON/ROZ 95/min. with 92 or 93 octane number

We recommend using petrol with **95** octane number.

Or you can use the petrol with **92** or **93** octane number. (with a minor power loss and slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency**, **91** petrol can be used (with a minor power loss and slightly increased fuel consumption).

The specified petrol RON/ROZ min. with 95 octane number.

Use petrol with minimum **95** octane number.

Using higher octane petrol than 95 RON may result in improved performance and lower fuel consumption.

In an **emergency**, you can use petrol with **91**, **92** or **93** octane number. (with a minor power loss and slightly increased fuel consumption).

The specified petrol RON/ROZ with 98/(95) octane number

We recommend using petrol with **98** octane number.

Or you can use petrol with **95** octane number. (with a minor power loss and slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency**, you can use petrol with **91**, **92** or **93** octane number. (with a minor power loss and slightly increased fuel consumption).

Additives

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

- Do not use petrol containing metal-based additives, e.g. manganese, iron, lead or e.g. LRP petrol – lead replacement petrol.
- Do not put any additional additives to diesel fuel that complies with the EN 228 standard.
- If you are using petrol that does not comply with the EN 228 standard, it is recommended to contact a specialist garage regarding the possible use of petrol additives approved by Škoda Auto.

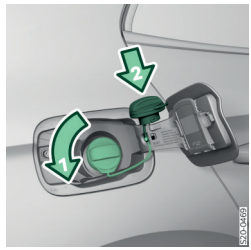
Conditions for refuelling

✓ Vehicle unlocked

✓ Ignition off

Refuelling

- Open the fuel filler neck cap.



1. Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
2. Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
3. Insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck up to the stop and refuel.
4. Do not continue refuelling after the fuel nozzle switches off.
5. Remove the fuel nozzle and place it back on the petrol pump.
6. Place the fuel cap on the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
7. Close the tank flap and click it into place.

Troubleshooting

If any fuel other than unleaded petrol has been used in your vehicle

1. Do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.
2. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

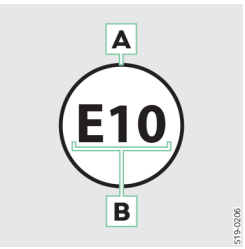
Lack of fuel

illuminates – the petrol level has reached the reserve area.

› Refuel

Technical data and specifications

The fuel specified for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



A Unleaded petrol

B Organic share as a percentage

Example of fuel marking

The fuel tank capacity is approx. 40 l or 50 l (depending on vehicle equipment), including a 7 l reserve.

12V vehicle battery and fuses

12V vehicle battery

What you should be mindful of

Explanation of the warning symbols on the 12V battery

Wear protective goggles!

The acid in the 12V battery is very caustic. Wear gloves and eye protection.

Keep fire, sparks and naked flames away from the 12V battery! Do not smoke!

A highly explosive gas mixture is produced when the 12V battery is charged!

Keep children away from the 12V battery!

Follow the instructions in the Owner's Manual!

Rinse eyes with water at once. Seek medical attention immediately!

Functionality – protection against the 12V battery discharging

Automatic system-related discharge protection for the 12V battery

- Increases the engine idling speed
- Switches off certain consumers or restricts their use of power

Recommendations when the vehicle is stationary for more than 3 weeks

- Disconnect the ⊖ terminal of the 12V battery.
- Charge the 12V car battery every 4 weeks.

Causes of the 12V battery discharging

- Worn 12V battery
- Frequent short journeys
- Low temperatures
- Vehicle stationary for a long period of time
- The ignition is switched on too long
- The parking lights are switched on too long
- A 12V device is plugged in.

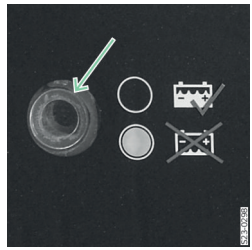
Checking and charging the 12V vehicle battery

Checking the condition

The specialist garage checks the condition of the 12V battery during servicing.

Checking the acid level

Applies to a 12V battery with an acid level indicator.



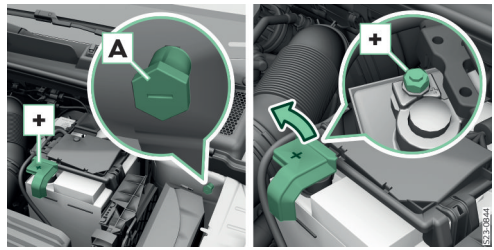
- Tap on the indicator before testing to clear air bubbles.
- Black – the acid level is OK.
- Colourless or pale yellow – the acid is too low, the 12V battery must be replaced.

Requirements for charging a 12V battery

- ✓ Ignition off
- ✓ Power consumers switched off

The process of charging a 12V battery

To charge the 12V battery, set a max. charging current at 0.1 times its total capacity until fully charged.



Engine compartment: Earth point and ⊕ charging pole

A Earth point

\+ ⊕ charging pole of the 12V vehicle battery (under the cap)

1. Take off the cap ⊕ of the charging pole.
2. Connect the ⊕charger terminal to ⊕ pole of the 12V battery.
3. Connect the ⊖ terminal of the charger to the A earth point.

4. Plug the charger's power cable into the socket and switch on the device.
5. After charging, switch off the charger and unplug the power cable from the socket.
6. Disconnect the charger terminals from the 12V battery.
7. Put on the cap ⊕ of the charging pole.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion!

› Hydrogen is released during charging. An explosion can also be caused by sparks, for example, when disconnecting or loosening the cable connector.
› Never charge a frozen or thawed 12V battery.
› Do not "quick charge" a 12V battery yourself, have it done by a specialist garage.

⚠ NOTICE

A flat 12V battery can freeze easily!

Troubleshooting

12V vehicle battery charging fault

illuminated

1. Leave the car in a safe place, taking into account the current traffic situation.
2. Stop the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

12V vehicle battery fault

illuminated

Indication on the instrument cluster display of the 12V vehicle battery fault.

› Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Insufficiently charged 12V vehicle battery

illuminated

Indication on the instrument cluster screen of a weak or discharged 12V vehicle battery.

1. Drive a distance of several km to recharge the 12V vehicle battery.

   Or:

   Charge the 12V vehicle battery with the charger.
2. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Disconnecting, connecting, replacing

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of fire!

› Do not mix up the connection cables.

Uncoupling

1. Close all electrically operated windows.
2. Switch off the ignition and any connected power consumers.
3. Disconnect the ⊖ terminal and then the ⊕ terminal.

Coupling

› Connect the ⊕ terminal and then the ⊖ terminal.

When the ignition is switched on, the indicator lights come on

› If, after a short distance, one of the above indicator lights does not go out, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Operate these vehicle functions after disconnecting and connecting the 12V battery

› Window operation » page 36.

Replacing

Have the replacement carried out by a specialist garage. The new 12V battery must have the same specifications as the original battery.

Using jump start cables

Use

A vehicle with a discharged or defective 12V vehicle battery can be started using jump start cables connected to the 12V battery of another vehicle.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion and chemical burns!

› Do not jump start with the 12V vehicle battery of another vehicle under the following conditions:
  › The discharged 12V vehicle battery is frozen. A discharged 12V vehicle battery may freeze at temperatures just below zero.
  › The acid level in the 12V vehicle battery is too low » page 163.

Use jump start cables with a sufficient cross section and insulated terminal clamps.

Nominal voltage of both vehicle batteries must be 12V. The capacity (in Ah) of the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged 12V vehicle battery.

Using another vehicle's 12V vehicle battery to start the vehicle

⚠ WARNING

Risk of injury! Risk of damage to the vehicle

› Position the jump start cables so that they cannot become caught by rotating parts in the engine compartment

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of short circuit

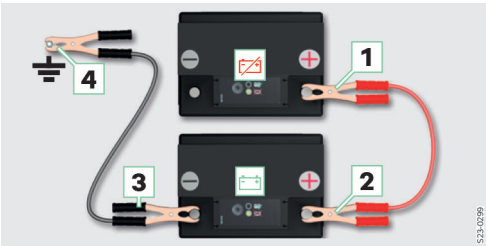
› The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must not touch each other.

› The cable connected to the positive pole of the 12V vehicle battery must not come into contact with electrically conductive vehicle parts.

› The vehicles must not touch each other.

Connecting the jump start cables

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Connect the terminals of the jump start cables of the discharged 12V vehicle battery and the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery as shown below.

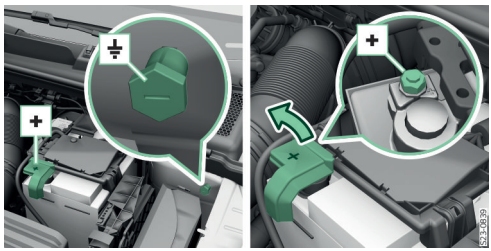


1 ⊕ pole of the discharged 12V vehicle battery

2 ⊕ pole of the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery

3 ⊖ pole of the current-supplying 12V vehicle battery (or earth point)

4 ⏚ earth point in the vehicle with the discharged 12V battery



Engine compartment: Earth point / ⊕ 12V vehicle battery pole (under the cover)

Starting the engine

› Start the engine of the assistance vehicle and let it idle (applies to vehicles with an internal combustion engine).

Or:

1. Switch on the electric drive of the assistance vehicle (applies to a vehicle with an electric motor).
2. Start up the vehicle with the discharged 12V vehicle battery.
3. If the engine of the vehicle with the discharged 12V vehicle battery does not start within 10 seconds, repeat the starting procedure after approximately 30 seconds.

Disconnecting the cables

› Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

Fuses

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

Fire hazard and risk of damage to the electrical system.

› Do not repair fuses or replace them with higher-rated fuses.

› Replace the defective fuse with a new fuse with the same amperage.

› We recommend using replacement fuses from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range. These guarantee reliable and safe protection of the vehicle's electric system.

› If a newly inserted fuse blows again, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

ⓘ One fuse may serve several consumers. One consumer may have several fuses.

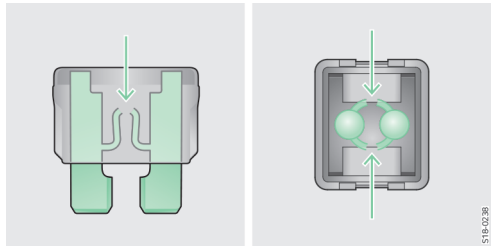
ⓘ NOTICE

Dirt and moisture in the fuses can cause damage to electrical equipment!

› Protect the fuses from dirt and moisture.

Functionality

Fuses protect the vehicle systems from damage caused by excessive current. The fuse blows when the current is exceeded.



Blown fuse

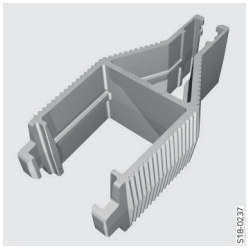
Conditions for replacing a fuse

✓ Ignition key removed (vehicle without starter button)

✓ Ignition switched off and driver's door open (vehicle with starter button)

✓ All consumers switched off

Replacing a fuse



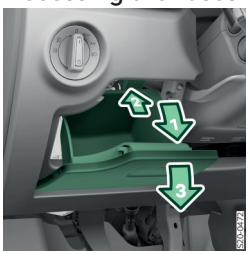
1 Use the appropriate end of the clamp based on the fuse dimensions.

› Replace the fuse by means of the clamp located on the inside of the fuse box cover in the engine compartment.

Fuses in the dash panel

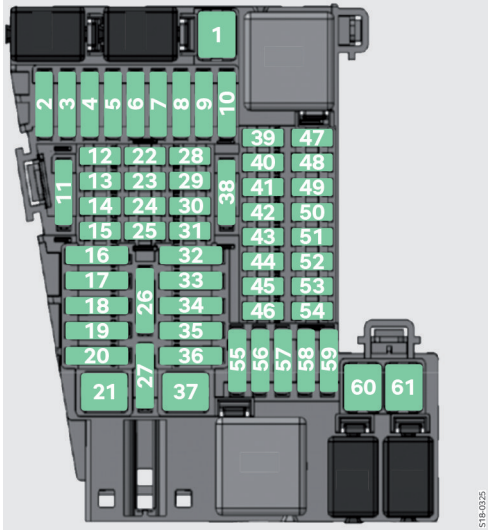
Overview

Accessing the fuses



1. Open the storage compartment on the driver's side.
2. Press and hold the latch.
3. Tilt the box out.
4. Remove the box by pulling it towards you.
5. Replace the fuse.
6. Put the box back in its original place and close it.

Fuses overview



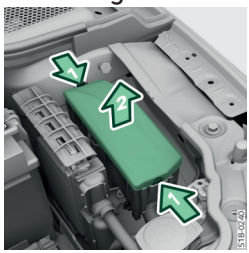
Fuse number	Consumer
1	Towing device
2	Headlight – left-hand side
3	Music amplifier
4	Headlight washers
6	Central locking
8	Climatronic, manual air conditioning
9	Headlight – right-hand side
10	Towing device
12	Steering wheel heating
13	Light switch, diagnostic socket, rain sensor, control levers under the steering wheel
14	Windscreen washer system
15	Instrument cluster, emergency call
16	Lights – right side
17	Electric window control – right-hand side
18	Windscreen wipers
19	The Infotainment system
20	Rear window heating
22	USB charging
23	Rear view camera
24	Phone box, GSM antenna, USB port, the Infotainment system display
25	Control lever under the steering wheel
26	Data bus

Fuse number	Consumer
28	Alarm system sensor
29	Alarm siren
30	Ignition (switch box)
31	Air conditioning
33	Electric window control – left-hand side
35	Lights – left side
36	Horn
37	Front seat heating
38	Interior lighting, button lighting, headlight washers, backlighting
39	Assist systems
40	Light switch, headlights, headlight levelling, diagnostic connector, reversing switch, control levers under the steering wheel
41	Interior mirror dimming, exterior mirror adjustment, air conditioning, buttons on the central console
42	Clutch pedal switch, starting
43	Rear window wiper
44	Airbag system, airbag control lamp
45	Windscreen wipers
48	Electric steering column lock, KESSY (keyless lock and start system)
50	USB rear-view mirror socket
52	Cigarette lighter / 12V socket at front
53	Ignition key trigger lock, automatic transmission
59	Exterior mirror heating
60	Towing device
61	Towing device

Fuses in the engine compartment

Overview

Accessing the fuses



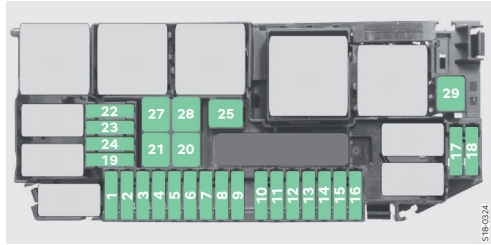
1. Press and hold the fuse latch.
2. Remove the cover.
3. Replace the fuse.
4. Fit the cover and click it into place.

NOTICE

Danger of water entering the fuse box.

› Fit the cover correctly and click into place securely.

Fuses overview



Fuse number	Consumer
1	Engine control unit
2	Exhaust flap, engine components
3	Lambda probes
4	Fuel pump
5	Radiator fan, oil level and oil temperature sensor, engine components
6	Engine components
7	Brake system (vacuum pump)
8	Engine components
9	Brake light switch
10	Data bus, battery status monitoring
12	Air conditioning
14	ESC, engine control system, windscreen heating, engine components
15	Automatic gearbox
17	Engine control system
18	Starter
20	ESC
21	ESC
25	Radiator fan
27	Radiator fan
29	Windscreen heating

Wheels

Tyres and rims

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Do not use worn or damaged tyres (e.g. with holes, dents, cracks and bulges).

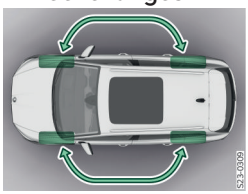
ⓘ NOTICE

› Protect tyres from contact with lubricants and fuel.
› Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres without rims should be stored in an upright position.
› Alloy rims can be damaged by grit.
› Do not use light alloy rims with a ground surface in wintry weather conditions or with snow chains.

Causes of uneven tyre wear

› Incorrect tyre pressure
› Driving style, e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration and braking
› Incorrect wheel alignment
› Incorrect wheel balancing

Wheel changes



For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10,000 km according to the schedule.

Advice for tyre assembly

With directional tyres, observe the correct direction of rotation. The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by arrows on the wall of the tyre. Winter and all-season tyres usually include a directional tyre tread pattern.

Always replace the tyres by axle.

Additional information

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size and the same tread pattern on one axle.

Approved tyre sizes are specified in the vehicle technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity, the COC document.

The Declaration of Conformity can be obtained from a Škoda Partner (valid for certain countries and models).

Overview of tyre labelling

Explanation of tyre markings

E.g. 185/65 R 15 92 V

185 Tyre width in mm
65 Height/width ratio in %
R Code letter for the type of tyre – Radial
15 Wheel diameter in inches
92 Load index
V Speed symbol

Load index

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

88 560 kg
89 580 kg
91 615 kg
92 630 kg
99 775 kg

Speed symbol

The speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in the category concerned.

M 130 km/h
H 210 km/h
V 240 km/h
W 270 km/h
Y 300 km/h

⚠ WARNING

› Do not exceed the maximum permissible load and speed for the mounted tyres.

Tyre tread wear indicator



Wear indicators are located in the profile of the tyres to display the permissible minimum tread depth.

The position of the indicators is marked with letters TWI on the side of the tyre, or with symbols, such as △.

A tyre is considered worn out when this wear indicator is flush with the tread.

The tread depth can be measured with a gauge on the ice scraper. The scraper is located on the inside of the fuel filler cap.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!
› Check the tread depth regularly.
› Do not use worn tyres.

Tyre manufacture date
The manufacture date is indicated on the tyre sidewall.

E.g. DOT ... 03 24 means that the tyre was manufactured in the 3. week in 2024.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!
› Do not use tyres that are more than 6 years old.

Troubleshooting

Help with a flat tyre
› Spare wheel and temporary spare wheel » page 170
› Replacing the wheel and lifting the vehicle » page 170
› Tyre repair kit » page 172

Tyre pressure change
illuminated

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Check the tyres and tyre pressures

Displaying tyres with modified pressures
› In the following menu, select the item to display the tyre status:

CAR >

Or:

MENU > >

All-season or winter tyres

Use
All-season or winter tyres improve performance in winter weather conditions. They are identified by 'M+S' and a mountaintop and snowflake symbol .

The symbol on the tyre provides information about the grip on snow.

The symbol on the tyre manufacturer's sticker provides information about the grip on ice.

What you should be mindful of
For the best possible performance, use tyres with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm on all four wheels.

Change winter tyres to summer tyres at the appropriate time. Summer tyres have better driving and braking characteristics on ice-free roads without snow and at temperatures above 7°C.

Usage conditions
When using all-season or winter tyres with a lower speed category than the specified maximum vehicle speed, then proceed as follows:

1. In the Infotainment system, set the speed limit based on the category of tyres fitted.
2. Affix a warning label in the driver's field of view with the maximum value of the speed category intended for the tyres fitted (only applies to certain countries).

Settings
Set the speed limit of the tyres in the following Infotainment menu:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Snow chains

Use
Snow chains improve handling the vehicle on icy or snowy roads.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident and tyre damage
› Do not use chains on sections without snow and ice.

What you should be mindful of
ⓘ NOTICE
› Remove the wheel covers before fitting the snow chains.
› Mount snow chains on the front wheels only.

Technical data and specifications
Permitted rim and tyre combinations for mounting snow chains:

Rim dimensions	Tyre dimensions
5Jx14 ET38	185/70 R14
5,5Jx15 ET40	185/65 R15
6Jx16 ET45	195/55 R16

Only use snow chains with links no larger than 13 mm, including locks.

Spare wheel and temporary spare wheel

Overview

Spare wheel

› The dimensions of a standard full-size spare wheel match the dimensions of the wheels mounted on the vehicle.

› The temporary spare wheel is not full-size and it is marked with a warning label on the disc. It is intended to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

Inflate the temporary spare wheel to the highest prescribed pressure.

Temporary wheel

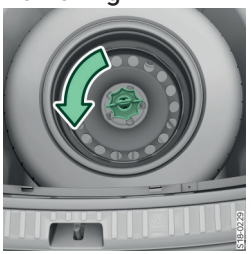
The temporary wheel is marked with a warning label on the disc and it is intended to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The temporary spare wheel is significantly narrower than the factory-fitted wheels.

Removing and replacing the wheel in vehicles without sound system

The spare wheel or the temporary spare wheel is stored in a recess under the carpet or between two floor levels in the boot.

Removing



1. Loosen the fastening strap and remove the toolbox.
2. Unscrew the lock nut.
3. Remove the wheel.

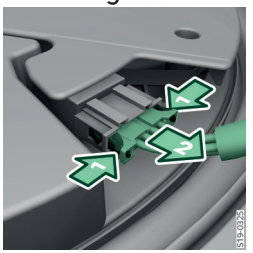
Inserting

1. Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.
2. Put the fastening strap through the opposite holes in the wheel disc.
3. Screw in the lock nut until it stops.
4. Insert the toolbox into the wheel and secure it with the strap.

If the replaced wheel cannot be stowed in the wheel well under the carpet, stow it in the luggage compartment.

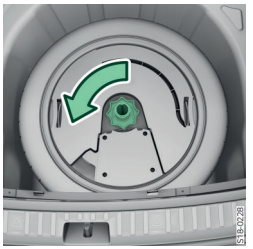
Removing and stowing the wheel in vehicles with sound system

Removing



Unplugging the connector:

1. Loosen the fastening strap and remove the toolbox.
2. Press the safety buttons and remove the connector.



Removing the wheel:

1. Unscrew the lock nut.
2. Remove the bass loudspeaker.
3. Remove the wheel.

Inserting

1. Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.
2. Insert the bass loudspeaker.
3. Screw in the lock nut until it stops.
4. Insert the connector in the bass loudspeaker.
5. Insert the toolbox into the wheel and secure it with the strap.

› If the subwoofer does not fit in the wheel you have replaced, stow it in the luggage compartment.

› If the replaced wheel cannot be stowed in the wheel well under the carpet, stow it in the luggage compartment.

Replacing the wheel and lifting the vehicle

What you should be mindful of

Before replacing the wheel

1. Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.

   Block the wheel that is diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed at the front and rear using suitable tools.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Make sure no one is in the vehicle. During the wheel change, occupants should stay off the road and safely behind crash barriers, etc.

4. Close all doors, the boot and the bonnet.
5. If a trailer is connected, disconnect it.

Lifting the vehicle

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure the base plate of the lifting jack cannot slip!

- Provide a wide and firm base under the jack on loose surfaces.
- Create a non-slip base (e.g. place a rubber floor mat) under the jack on a smooth surface.
- Always lift the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Make sure no body parts are positioned under the lifted vehicle.
- Do not start the engine of the lifted vehicle.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle

- Make sure that the jack is correctly engaged with the bridge of the sill.

After replacement

1. Check the tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary.
2. In vehicles with a tyre pressure indicator, save the values in the system.
3. Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts on the mounted tyres checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

   The specified tightening torque is 120 Nm.
4. Drive carefully until the tightening torque has been checked.
5. Replace the damaged tyre. It is not recommended to repair the tyre.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Insufficient tightening torque may cause the wheel to disengage while driving.
- Excessive tightening torque can damage the threads and cause the rim to deform.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Do not grease or lubricate screws.
- Do not use corroded or damaged screws.

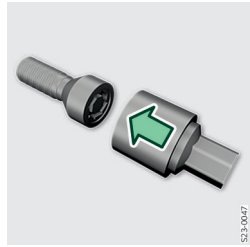
Replacing the wheel and raising the vehicle

Before loosening the bolts

- If the vehicle is equipped with wheel bolt covers, remove them » page 174.
- If the vehicle is equipped with full wheel covers, remove them » page 174.

Instructions for a vehicle with anti-theft wheel bolts

Some vehicles may have anti-theft wheel bolts that protect the wheels from theft.



- Insert the upper section on the anti-theft wheel bolt until it stops.

Removing the bolts

⚠ WARNING

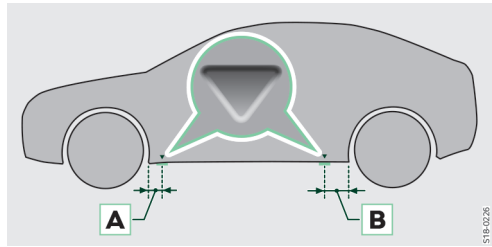
- If standing on the wheelbrace when loosening the bolts, hold on to the vehicle for better stability.



1. Place the wheelbrace on the wheel bolt or on the attachment piece.
2. Turn the bolt a maximum of half a turn so that the wheel does not come loose and fall off.

Jacking points

The jacking points are located on the vehicle's lower sill.



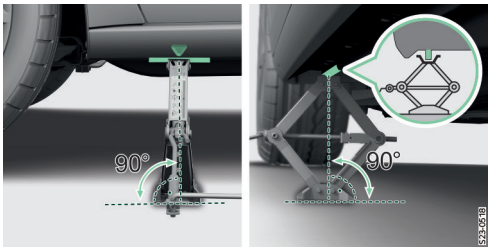
A 16 cm

B 26.5 cm

Positioning the jack and lifting the vehicle

⚠ NOTICE

- Use the jack from the tool kit.



1. Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel to be replaced.
2. Support the base plate of the jack with its full surface resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point.
3. Use the crank to raise the jack until its claw encloses the bar.
4. Continue to lift the vehicle until the wheel is just off the ground.

Replacing a wheel

1. Loosen the bolts and place them on a clean surface.
2. Carefully remove the wheel.
3. Fit the replacement wheel.
4. Contact tighten the bolts.
5. Lower the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

This applies to factory built or original accessory wheel trims from Škoda.

› Install the anti-theft wheel bolt in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim.

Tightening the bolts

1. Tighten opposite wheel bolts, including the anti-theft wheel bolt, one after the other.
2. Refit the wheel bolt caps » page 174.

Or:

› Refit the full wheel covers » page 174.

ⓘ Keep the label with the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolts. A replacement attachment can be purchased from the Škoda Genuine Parts.

Tyre repair kit

What you should be mindful of

The repair kit is not substitute for a permanent tyre repair.

The repair is intended only for driving to the nearest specialist garage.

Replace the tyre repaired with the puncture repair kit as soon as possible.

Do not remove a foreign object such as a screw or nail from a damaged tyre.

ⓘ Vehicles fitted with SEAL tyres with increased puncture resistance at the factory are not equipped with a tyre repair kit.

Before using the kit

1. Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Make sure no one is in the vehicle. During the wheel change, occupants should stay off the road, e.g. behind crash barriers, etc.
4. Close all doors and the boot and the bonnet lid.
5. If a trailer is connected, disconnect it.

After using the kit

If it is not possible to achieve a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar, the tyre is badly damaged and cannot be sealed with the kit:

› Do not continue driving. Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

If the tyre pressure is 2.0 – 2.5 bar, you can continue driving at max. 80 km/h, or 50 mph.

› Avoid full acceleration, strong braking and fast cornering.

Instructions for driving with a repaired tyre

1. Place a speed limit sticker in the driver's view.
2. Check the pressure of the repaired tyre after 10 minutes of driving.
3. If the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar, do not continue driving! Seek assistance from a specialist garage.
4. If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar, adjust it to the correct value, at least 2 bar, and continue driving.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the compressor!
Maximum compressor run time is 8 min.

› Allow the compressor to cool down for a few minutes after the maximum running time has elapsed.

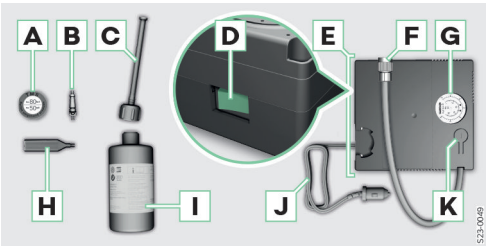
⚠ WARNING

Risk of getting burned!
The tyre inflation hose and the compressor may be hot after use.

› Allow the compressor and hose to cool down for a few minutes.

Content overview

The repair kit is stored in a box under the carpet in the luggage compartment.



- **A** Speed limit sticker
- **B** Replacement valve insert
- **C** Filler hose with plug
- **D** Switch
- **E** Air compressor (the location of the controls may vary depending on the type of compressor)
- **F** Tyre inflation hose
- **G** Pressure indicator
- **H** Extension for removing and inserting the valve insert
- **I** Filling bottle
- **J** Plug for 12V socket
- **K** Pneumatic pressure relief button

Declaration of conformity is included with the compressor or in the on-board folders.

Restrictions on use

Do not use the kit in the following cases:

› The rim is damaged.
› Outside temperature is below –30 °C.
› The puncture in the tyre is larger than 4 mm.
› The side of the tyre is damaged.
› The expiry date on the filler bottle has passed.

Using the kit

Sealing the tyre

1. Unscrew the valve cap of the damaged tyre.
2. Using the attachment, unscrew the valve insert and place it on a clean pad.
3. Shake the sealant bottle.
4. Screw the filler hose onto the bottle. Puncture the foil on the cap.
5. Remove the stopper from the filler tube and fit it onto the tyre valve.
6. Hold the bottle upside down and pour the entire contents into the tyre.
7. Remove the filler hose from the valve.
8. Screw on the valve insert.

Inflate the tyre

1. Fit the compressor hose onto the tyre valve.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
3. Start the engine.
4. Insert the compressor plug into the 12V socket.
5. Switch on the compressor.
6. When the pressure reaches 2.0 – 2.5 bar, switch off the compressor.

   Observe the maximum compressor run time, which is 8 min.
7. If the tyre pressure has not reached 2.0 – 2.5 bar, remove the hose from the valve.
8. Move forward or backward approximately 10 m to allow the sealant to spill in the tyre.
9. Refit the hose to the valve and repeat the inflation.

Tyre pressure

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

› Always adjust the tyre pressure to the load.
› Check the pressure in all tyres at least once a month and before each long journey.
› Check the pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.
› After each change in tyre pressure, save the new values in the tyre control display.

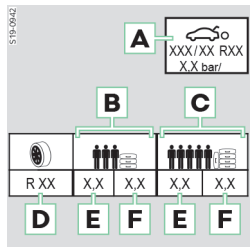
⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› If the tyre pressure loss is very sudden, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.

Label with the specified tyre pressure values

The label with the specified tyre pressure values can be found on the side of the right rear door.



- **A** Specified tyre pressure value for the temporary wheel
- **B** Tyre pressure in case of partial load
- **C** Tyre pressure when fully loaded
- **D** Tyre diameter in inches

  This information only relates to the specified tyre pressure. It is not a listing of approved tyre sizes for your vehicle. Approved tyre sizes are specified in the technical vehicle documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity, the COC document.
- **E** Tyre pressure reading for the front tyres

F Tyre pressure reading for the rear tyres

Tyre pressure monitor

Functionality

The tyre pressure monitor indicates a change in tyre pressure.

Tyre pressure change alert

illuminated

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Check the tyres and tyre pressures

Displaying tyres with modified pressures

› In the following menu, select the item to display the tyre status:

CAR >

Or:

MENU > >

Function restriction

The system is unable to provide a warning in the event of a very rapid tyre pressure loss, e.g. sudden puncture.

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

› Uneven wheel loading, e.g. driving with a trailer
› Sporty driving style
› Driving on dirt roads
› Mounted snow chains

Storing the tyre pressure

Storing the tyre pressure

1. Inflate the tyres to the specified pressure.
2. Turn on the ignition.
3. In the following Infotainment system menu, select the item to display the vehicle status:

   CAR >

   Or:

   MENU > >
4. Use the ◀ ▶ function surfaces to select the tyre monitoring menu.
5. Press the **SET** function surface.
6. Follow the instructions on the screen.

When the tyre pressure needs to be saved

› Change of tyre pressure
› Change of one or more wheels
› Change of position of a wheel on the vehicle
› Always after 10,000 km or once a year

Troubleshooting

Restricted function / system fault

flashes approx. 1 minute and then remains illuminated

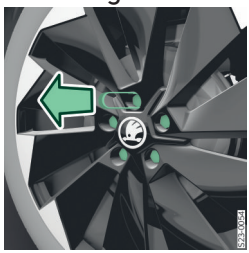
1. Stop the vehicle, switch off the ignition and start the engine.

   If the indicator light flashes again after starting the engine there is a fault in the system.
2. Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Wheel bolt cover caps

Removing and installing bolt caps

Removing



1. Push the pull-off clamp onto the cover cap up to the stop.
2. Remove the cover cap.

Installing

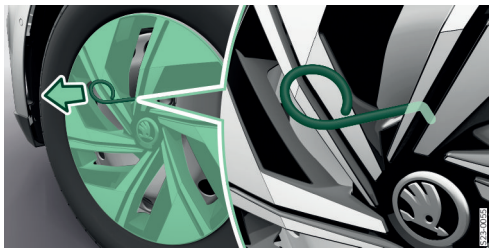
› Push the cover cap onto the wheel bolt to the stop.

Full-width wheel cover

Removing and installing the trim

Removing

This applies to Aero factory-built wheel trims or trims from Škoda Genuine Accessories.



1. Put the hook for removing the wheel trims behind the rim close to the centre.
2. Pull the centre of the wheel trim loose and remove the trim.

For easier removal, you can put the wheel bolt wrench through the eye of the hook and pull on both ends of the wrench.

Installing

This applies to Aero factory-built wheel trims or trims from Škoda Genuine Accessories.

1. Fit the trim to the wheel rim and gradually push the individual spokes of the trim until they are fully engaged.
2. Push the centre of the trim until it is fully engaged.

NOTICE

› Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Removing

It does not apply to Aero trims. It applies to factory-built or Škoda Genuine Accessories trims.

1. Hang the hook for removing the wheel trims at the edge of one of the openings in the trim.
2. Push the wheelbrace through the hook, push on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing

It does not apply to Aero trims. It applies to factory-built or Škoda Genuine Accessories trims.

1. Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.

   When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, it must be located as shown on the trim.
2. Press the trim, starting at the valve, into the rim on both sides until it engages around the entire circumference.

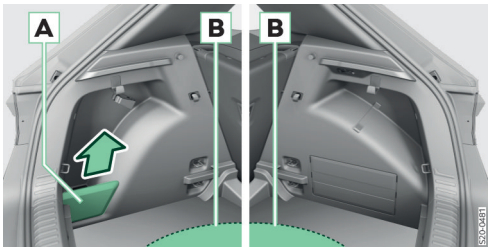
NOTICE

› Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Storage space and interior equipment

Luggage compartment equipment

Overview



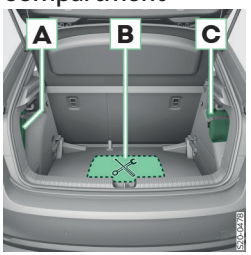
A Removable storage box partition
Max. load 2.5 kg

B Under the carpet: space for stowing the spare or temporary wheel and toolkit
Max. load on the carpet is 75 kg

Emergency equipment

Overview

Emergency equipment in the luggage compartment



A Location of the warning triangle

B Tool kit

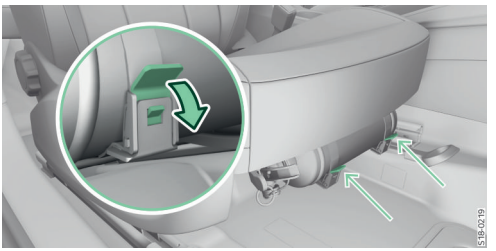
C First aid kit location

Storage compartment for the reflective vest

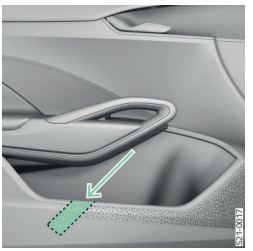
The storage compartment for the reflective vest is in the front door.

Fire extinguisher under the passenger seat

Only valid for certain countries.



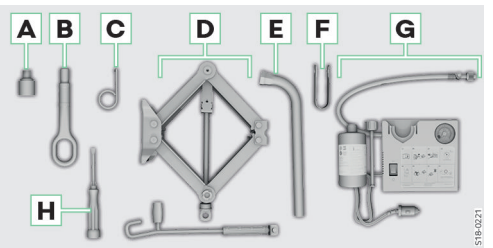
Storage compartment for the reflective vest



Tool kit

Overview

Depending on the equipment, not all of the following components may be included in the tool kit.



A Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts

B Towing eye

C Hook for removing the full wheel covers

D Jack with a sign and crank

E Wheelbrace

F Removal clip for the wheel bolt cover caps

G Tyre repair kit

H Screwdriver

The declaration of conformity is enclosed with the jack or the logbook folder.

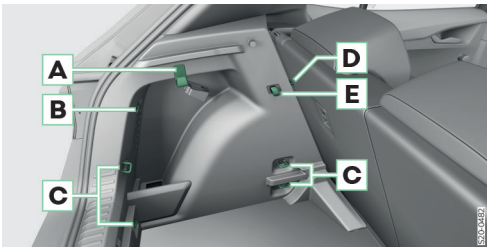
In some countries, a tyre pressure gauge may also be included.

NOTICE

When using the pressure gauge, take care not to damage the valve.

Fasteners in the boot

Overview



A Bag hook
Max. load 7.5 kg

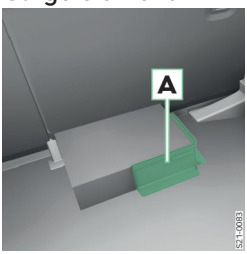
B Holder for securing the fastening nets

C Lashing eyes for securing load and securing nets
Max load of each lashing eye 50 kg

D Lashing eye for securing the fastening nets

E Hook for securing the fastening nets
Max. load 1.5 kg

Cargo element

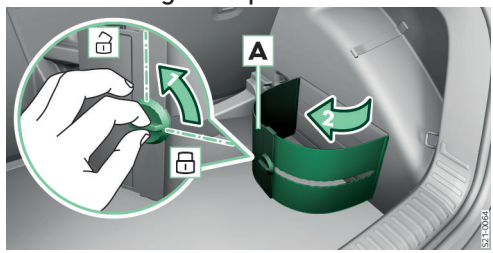


Max. load 8 kg

› Fold down the Cargo element A and fix it on the carpet in the luggage compartment.

Space for stowing the Cargo securing elements is under the carpet in the luggage compartment.

Flexible storage compartment

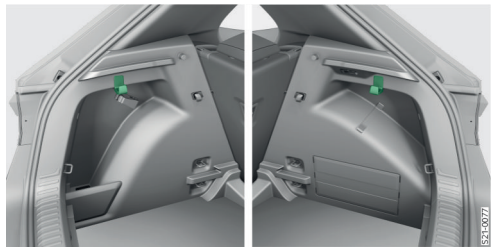


Max. load 8 kg

Tilting the box:

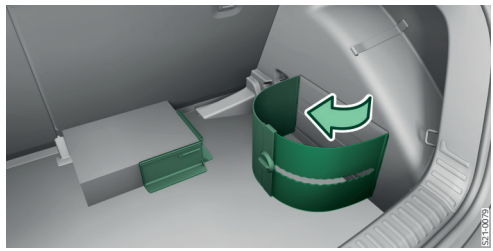
1. Release the A box by turning the latch.
2. Tilt the box away from the wall and secure it with the latch.

Bag hooks in the luggage compartment



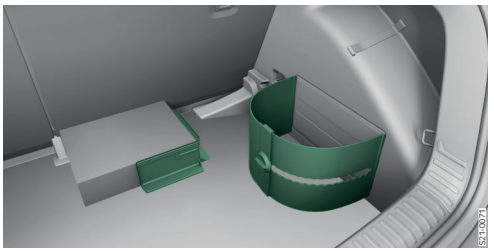
The maximum hook load is 7.5 kg.

Flexible storage compartment



Maximum storage compartment load is 8 kg.

Cargo elements in the luggage space



The maximum load of Cargo elements is 8 kg.

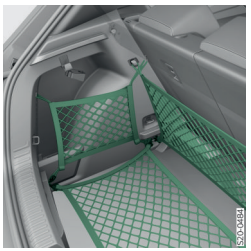
Hook on the attachment eye of the TOP TETHER system



The maximum hook load is 5 kg.

Securing nets

Overview



The maximum load is indicated on the label of each fastening net.

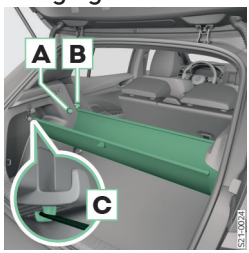
The location of the fasteners in the luggage compartment may vary depending on the vehicle equipment » *page 177*.

Storage pocket

Operation

Maximum load on the storage pocket is 3 kg.

Hanging



› Hook the storage pocket onto fixing points A, B or C.

Folding up



› Attach the rear bar to the front bar and secure it with the latch.

Double-sided carpet

Overview

The vehicle can be equipped with a double-sided carpet in the luggage compartment. One side is textile and the other is washable.

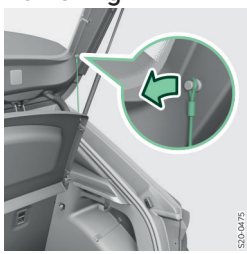
Boot lid

Removing and inserting

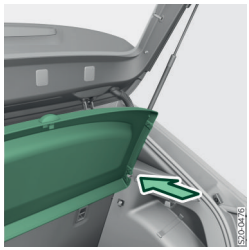
⚠ WARNING

Do not put any items on the rigid boot cover

Removing

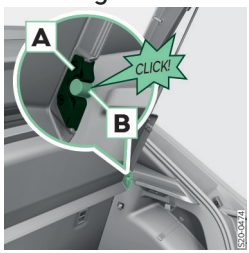


› Unhook the straps.



› Hold the raised cover in place and press the underside of the cover on both sides.
› Remove the cover.

Inserting



1. Insert the mount A opposite the holder B on both sides of the boot.
2. Press on the cover from above until it engages.
3. Hook in the retaining straps.

Stowing the cover behind the rear seats



› Slide the cover behind the rear seats.

Luggage compartment variable loading floor

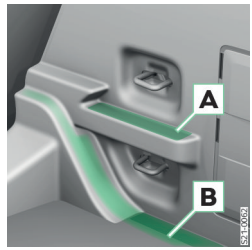
Setting the position

The maximum load on the variable loading floor in the upper position is 75 kg.

Adjusting the variable loading floor to upper or lower position



› Lift the variable floor panel and pull it towards you.

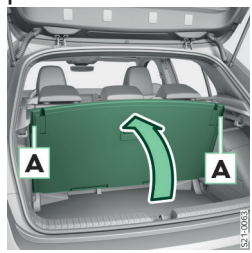


› To adjust it to the upper position, place the front of the variable floor panel on surface A.
› To adjust it to the lower position, place the front of the variable floor panel on surface B.



› Push the variable floor panel forward and put it down.

Tipping out the variable loading floor panel



› Tip the variable loading floor panel out in direction of the arrow and secure it with the folding corners at A.

Reclining the variable loading floor panel



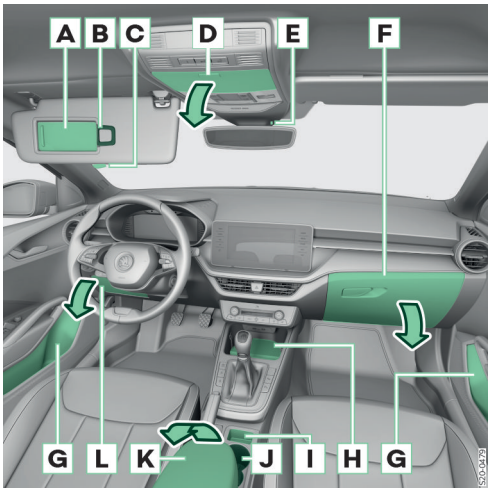
› Push the variable loading floor forward and recline it in the direction of the arrow.

Removing and inserting

1. Raise the variable loading floor about 15 cm below the level of the boot lid and remove it.
2. Insert it in the reverse way.

Interior equipment front

Overview



A Make-up mirror

B Ticket holder

C Parking permit holder

D Glasses holder
Max. load 0.25 kg
› Press on the lid to open.

E USB input
The USB input can only be used for charging.

F Storage compartment
A card holder and coin holder are inside the storage compartment.
Max. load 3 kg
› Pull the handle to open.

G Storage compartment
› Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
› Space for waste container
› Storage compartment for reflective vest

H Storage compartment (depending on vehicle equipment):
USB inputs, Phone box, card holder, pencil holder.
The USB inputs can be used for charging and for data transfer.

I Storage compartment

J Depending on vehicle equipment:
› Removable cup holder
› Removable storage box

K Storage compartment
There is a 12V socket in the compartment.
› To open the compartment, lift the lid.

L Storage compartment
Max. load 0.5 kg
A card holder is inside the storage compartment.
› Pull the handle to open.

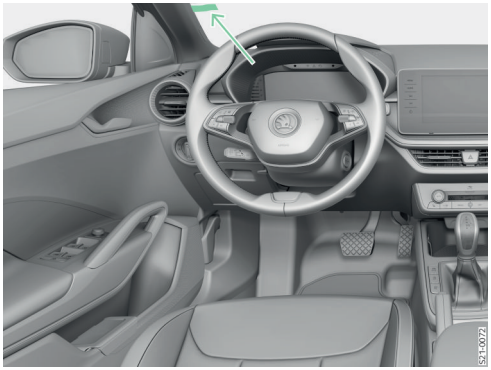
ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not leave any heat-sensitive objects in the spectacle compartment **D**

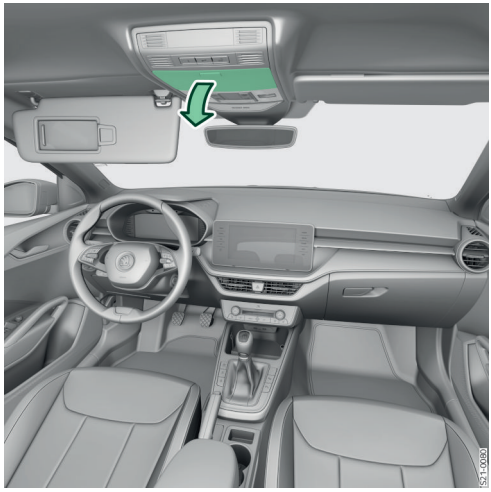
ⓘ NOTICE

It applies to vehicles equipped with factory-fitted carpets.
Risk of damage to the carpet under the pedals!
› Only use the car with carpets.
› We recommend the carpets from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

Parking permit holder



Glasses holder

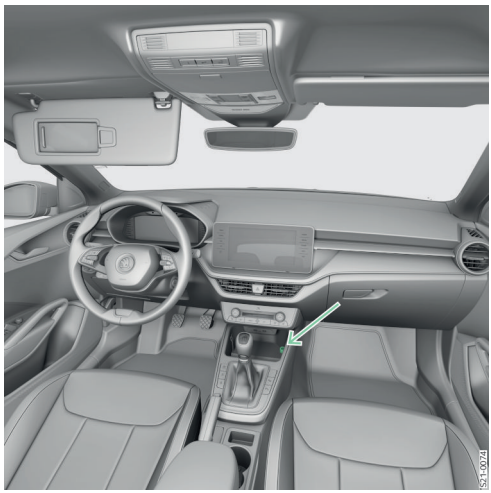


Maximum storage compartment load is 0.25 kg.

NOTICE

› Do not leave heat-sensitive objects in the glasses holder.

Pencil holder



Storage space for cards and coins



The space for a bottle is in the front door storage compartment

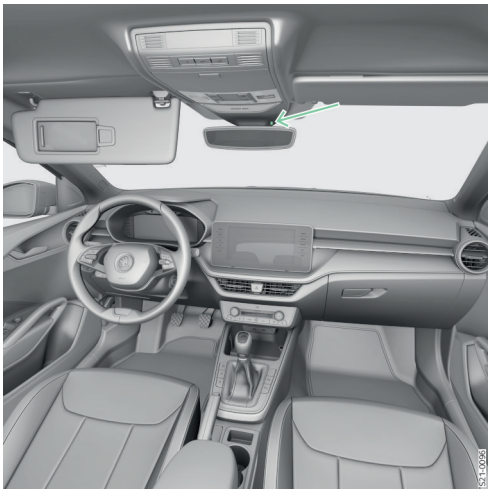


The compartment is designed for a bottle of max. 1.5 l

USB inputs

Operating conditions

› The Infotainment system on



The USB input can only be used for charging with 15 W charging power.



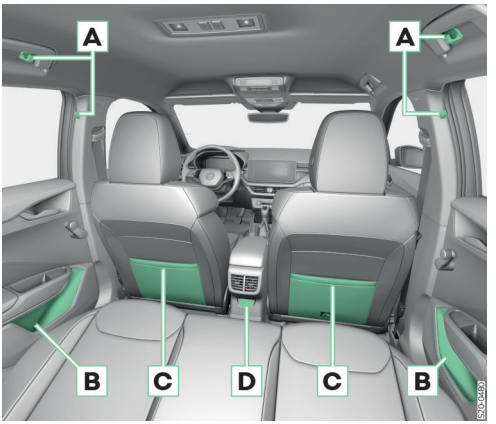
The USB inputs can be used for charging with up to 45 W charging power and for data transfer.



The USB inputs can only be used for charging with up to 45 W charging power.

Interior equipment rear

Overview



A Coat hook
Max. load 2 kg

B Storage compartment
› Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 0.5 l
› Storage compartment for reflective vest

C Storage pocket
› Storage pocket for a phone

D USB inputs
The USB inputs can only be used for charging.

⚠ WARNING

› Only hang lightweight clothing on the hook. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.

› Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.

NOTICE

› Do not put objects into the C storage pocked that may damage it.

The clothes hook on the middle door pillar



The maximum coat hooks load is 2 kg.

WARNING

› Only hang lightweight clothing on the hook. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.

› Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.

The space for a bottle in the rear door storage compartment



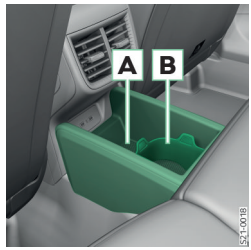
The compartment is designed for a bottle of max. 0.5 l

Phone pocket



Storage compartment behind the centre console

Overview



A Storage compartment

B Cup holder

Maximum storage compartment load is 1 kg.

There is a flexible cup holder in the storage compartment.

The holder can be folded to the edge of the compartment.

CAUTION

Risk of scalding!

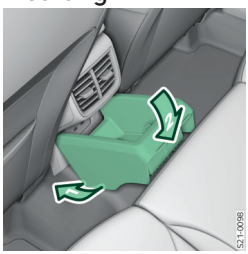
› Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system and to the panels due to spilled drinks.

Removing and inserting

Inserting



1. Insert the front of the compartment under the edge of the centre console.
2. Lift up the seat and push the rear of the compartment all the way in.
3. Check proper locking of the compartment.

Removing

Releasing is carried out in the opposite way to inserting.

Storage compartment for umbrella

Overview



ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the bodywork and interior lining of the vehicle!

- Only insert a broom from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range into the storage compartment.
- Always insert the umbrella all the way into the storage compartment.

Phone box

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of burns during charging!

- The phone may become warm; take care when removing it from the storage compartment.
- Do not leave any metal objects in the compartment under the phone. If there is a hot metal object in the storage compartment, remove the phone and allow it to cool down in the storage compartment.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to stored data!

- Do not leave identification cards, debit and credit cards with magnetic strips or chips in the phone's storage compartment.

Functionality

The Phone box function

Phone box charges your phone wirelessly with 15 W of charging power.

It is located at the front of the centre console storage compartment.

Insert a phone not larger than the space for the phone into the storage box.

Charging indicator

Applies to 7" and 8" Infotainment systems.

The charging status is indicated by the colour of the Φ symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment system screen.

- White – the phone is in the phone box, it is detected, and it is being charged.
- Red – the phone is in the phone box, it is detected, but it cannot be charged.
- Symbol not displayed – function unavailable.

Charging indicator

Applies to 9" Infotainment system

The charging status is indicated by the colour of the Φ symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment system screen.

- White – the phone is in the phone box, it is detected, and it is being charged.
- Grey – the phone is not in the phone box / the phone does not support wireless charging / the phone is fully charged.
- Red – the phone is in the phone box, it is detected, but it cannot be charged.
- Symbol not displayed – function unavailable.

Recommendations for optimal function

- The phone should be positioned with the screen facing up.
- Insert the phone without its protective case.
- Place the phone in the centre of the phone compartment.

Operating conditions

Conditions for wireless charging

- ✓ Ignition is on.
- ✓ Phone supports the Qi standard.
- ✓ There is no object between the pad and the phone.

Troubleshooting

The Infotainment system screen shows a message that the mobile phone cannot be charged.

› Check that there are no objects between the pad and the phone being charged. If so, remove the phone and the object. Place the phone again in the centre of the phone compartment.
› Check that the position of the phone being charged has not changed. If so, remove the phone and replace it in the centre of the phone compartment.

Cup holder

Overview

⚠ CAUTION

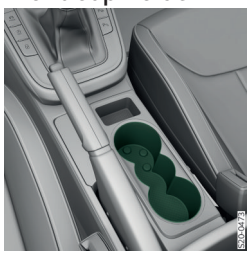
Risk of scalding!

› Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system and to the panels due to spilled drinks.

Front cup holder



The front part of the holder can be used to open a bottle with one hand.

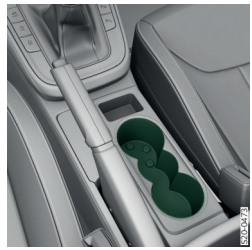
› Press the bottle into the holder and unscrew the cap.

The cup holder can be removed.

Rear cup holder



Cup holder Easy Open



The front part of the holder can be used to open a bottle with one hand.

› Press the bottle into the holder and unscrew the cap.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of scalding!

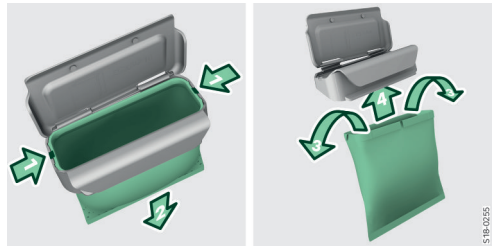
› Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system and to the panels due to spilled drinks.

Waste container

Replacing the bag



Ashtray and lighter

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

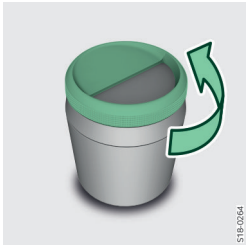
Risk of burns or fire!

› Do not use the ashtray to deposit hot or burning objects.
› Handle the lighter with care.

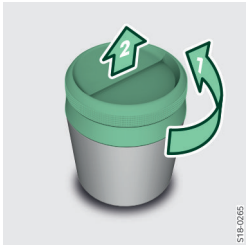
Operation

The ashtray is inserted into the cup holder.

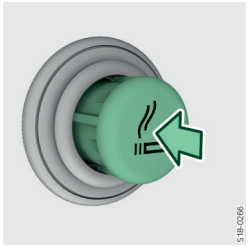
Opening the ashtray



Removing the lid



Lighter



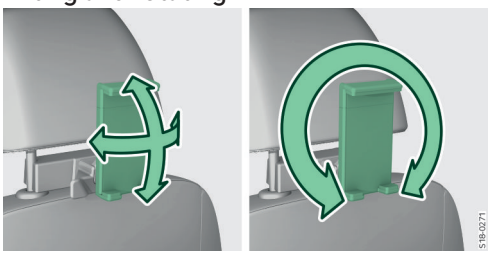
1. Push the lighter in.
2. Wait for the lighter to pop up.
3. Remove the lighter and use it.
4. Insert the lighter back in.

The lighter socket also serves as a 12V socket.

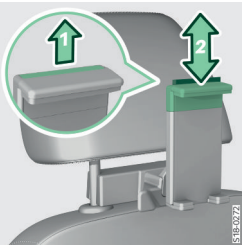
Tablet holder

Settings

Tilting and rotating



Resizing

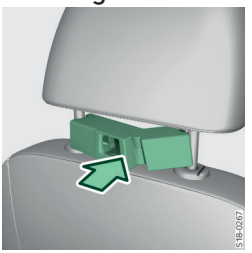


› Pull out the latch and slide the top of the holder to the desired position.

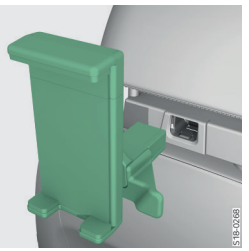
Reduce the empty holder to the minimum size so that it does not resonate while driving.

Removing and inserting

Inserting behind the headrest



› Place the unfastened adapter onto the front headrest guide bars and snap it in carefully.



› Snap the bracket into the adapter.

Inserting into the hole in the seat

Applies to sports seats.

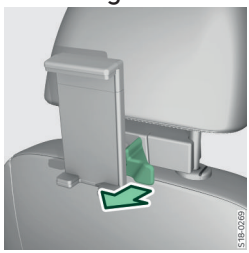


› Insert the holder into the seat hole and push it all the way in.

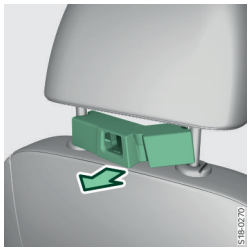


› Snap the bracket into the adapter.

Removing



› Press the lock mechanisms and remove the holder.



› Push the adapter and remove it.

Removing

Applies to sports seats.



› Press the lock mechanisms and remove the holder.



› Push the adapter and remove it.

Technical data and specifications

The holder is designed to hold a tablet with a height of min. 11.5 cm and a maximum of 19.5 cm.

Maximum holder load is 0.75 kg.

12V power socket

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle's electrical system

› Only use the sockets to connect approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the connected consumers!

› Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of discharging the 12V vehicle battery by connected appliances!

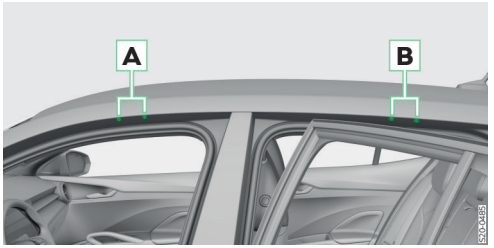
The sockets work even when the ignition is switched off.

Roof rack and the towing bracket

Roof rack

Technical data and specifications

Maximum weight of the load including the roof rack is 75 kg.



Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can attach the transverse roof racks to mounting points A and B.

› We recommend using roof racks from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

Removable towing bracket

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident and vehicle damage!

› Before each journey with the tow bar, check that it is correctly fitted in the clamp bushing.
› Do not use a damaged or incomplete tow bar.
› Do not make any modifications to the towing bracket.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

Dirt on the clamp bushing prevents the tow bar from being properly secured.

› Keep the clamp bushing of the tow bar clean.

ⓘ NOTICE

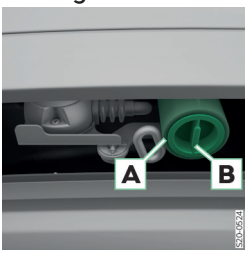
Do not use excessive force when handling the key, as this could damage one of the parts.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the entire towing bracket is removed from the vehicle, it must be replaced with the original rear bumper reinforcement, which includes the towing eye sleeve.

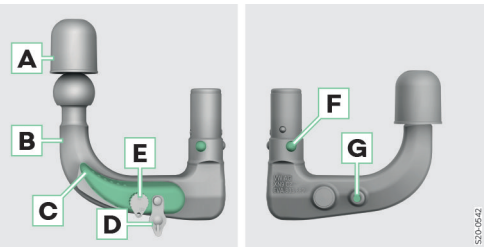
Overview

Towing bracket



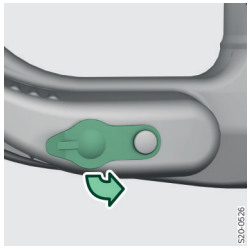
A Clamp bushing
B Clamp bushing opening cover

Tow bar

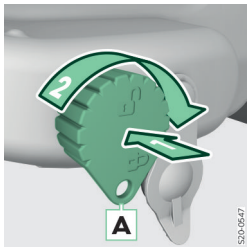


A Ball head cover
B Tow bar
C Control lever
D Lock cap
E Key
F Clamping balls
G The lock indicator
› Extended position: locked
› Retracted position: unlocked

Setting the ready position



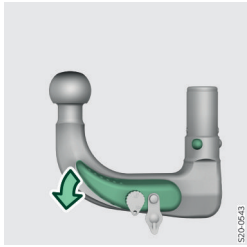
› Remove the cap from the lock.



1. Insert the key into the lock.

   The A eyelet must be pointing downwards.
2. Turn the key.

   The eyelet must be pointing upwards. The lock indicator will retract.



› Push the control lever all the way down.

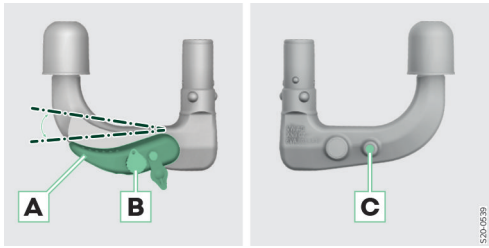
The control lever remains locked in this position.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the tow bar coming loose!

› Never try to force the control lever to the upper position so that the key can be turned. In this case, the tow bar would not be properly secured.

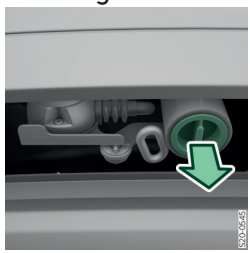
Conditions for fitting the tow bar



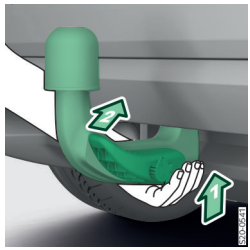
- ✓ Control lever A is locked in the low position.
- ✓ The B key eyelet points upwards.
- ✓ The C lock indicator is retracted.
- ✓ The key cannot be removed from the lock or turned to another position.

Installing the tow bar

Installing



› Remove the cover from the clamp bushing.



1. Hold the tow bar from the bottom.
2. Slide the tow bar into the clamp bushing upwards until it clicks into place.

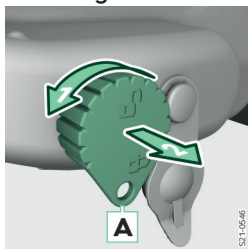
   The control lever will rotate to the upper position.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

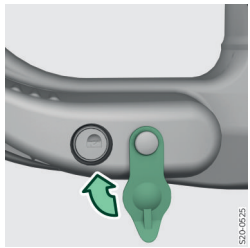
› Keep your hands away from the rotation path of the control lever when installing the tow bar.

Securing



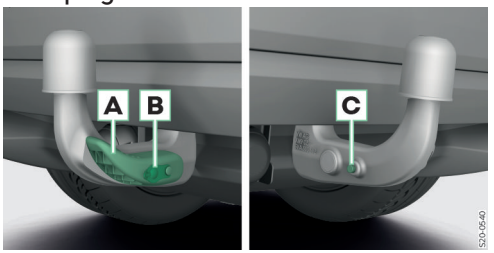
1. Turn the key.

   The A eyelet must be pointing downwards.
2. Remove the key.



› Replace the cover on the key.

Clamping check



- ✓ The tow bar is firmly held in the clamp bushing. There is no play when it is pushed hard.
- ✓ Control lever A is in the upper position.
- ✓ The key is removed and the B cap is fitted on the lock.
- ✓ The C lock indicator is fully extended.



Locked tow bar



Unlocked tow bar

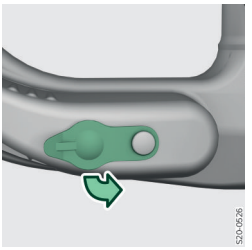
Removing the tow bar

ⓘ NOTICE

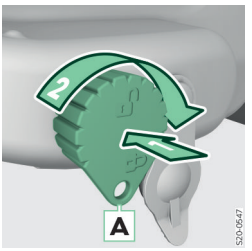
Risk of damage to the vehicle

› When releasing the tow bar, no trailer or other accessories must be attached to it.

🛈 Before removing the tow bar, refit the ball cap.



› Remove the cap from the lock.



1. Insert the key into the lock.

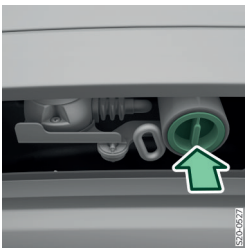
   The A eyelet must be pointing downwards.
2. Turn the key.

   The eyelet must be pointing upwards. The lock indicator will retract.



1. Hold the tow bar from the bottom.
2. Push the control lever all the way down.

   The tow bar will be released and fall freely down into your hand.



› Replace the cover of the clamp bushing.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the key!

› Stow the tow bar in the box in the ready position with the key pointing upwards.

Coupling and uncoupling the trailer or accessories

The following information describes how to couple and uncouple a trailer. The information also applies to other accessories, e.g. the bicycle rack.

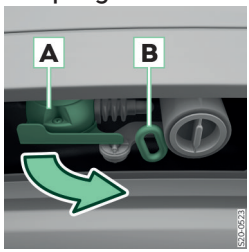
⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not use the safety eye for towing.
› Distribute and fix the load correctly.

ⓘ The towing bracket has an 13-pin socket . If the trailer has a 7-pin plug, use a reduction piece from Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

Coupling



1. Fit the tow bar.
2. Swivel out the A electrical socket.
3. Place the trailer onto the ball head of the tow bar.
4. Insert the electrical plug into the socket A.
5. Hook the breakaway cable of the trailer onto the safety eyelet B. The breakaway cable must sag in all trailer settings against the vehicle.

Uncoupling

Uncoupling is done in the reverse way.

Trailer power supply

When the vehicle is electrically connected to the trailer, the trailer is powered from the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle's electronic system!
Total power consumption of all appliances connected to the trailer's electrical network may be no more than 350 W

Troubleshooting

When fitting the tow bar – the control lever did not turn or the key cannot be turned in the lock

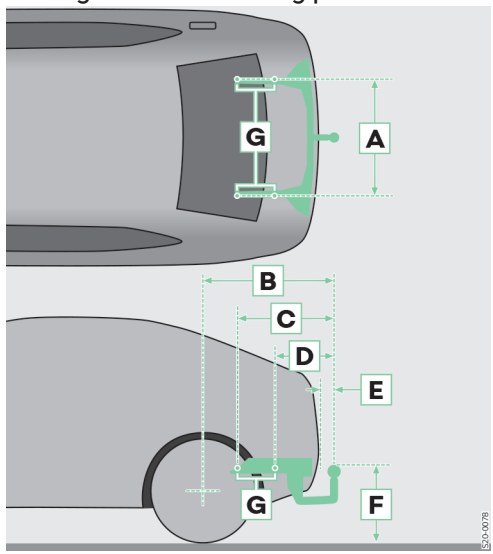
1. Turn the control lever all the way down.
2. Remove the tow bar from the clamp bushing.
3. Clean the contact surfaces of the tow bar and the clamp bushing.
4. If the problem persists, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

When removing the tow bar – the bar did not fall freely out after being released.

› Push down on the tow bar with the other hand.

Technical data and specifications

Towing bracket mounting points



A Mounting points spacing
B Length of rear overhang to the centre of the tow ball
C Distance of the front mounting point to the centre of the tow ball
D Distance of the rear mounting point to the centre of the tow ball
E Distance of the rear bumper to the centre of the tow ball (in accordance with the ECE-R 55 standard)
F Distance of the centre of the tow ball to the ground (in accordance with the ECE-R 55 standard)
G Mounting points on the bodywork

	Value in mm
A	1025
B	833.5
C	497.9
D	371.6
E	at least 65
F	350–420

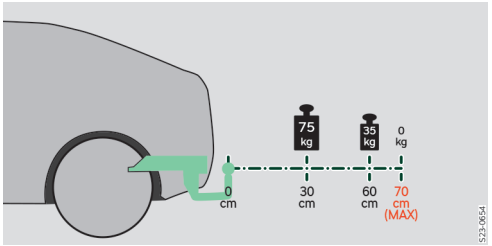
Do not exceed the maximum vertical load of the tow ball when trailer is used

Maximum vertical load of the tow ball when trailer is used is 75 kg.

The specifications for your vehicle can be found in the vehicle's technical documentation, e.g. vehicle registration documentation, COC document, or you can get them from your Škoda Partner.

Other data, e.g. on the type plate of the towing device, only provide information on the test values of the device.

Tow bar load with mounted accessories



When using accessories, e.g. bicycle racks, the maximum length of the accessory and its total permissible weight, including the load, must be observed.

Maximum length of the mounted accessory, measured from the ball of the towing bracket, must not exceed 70 cm.

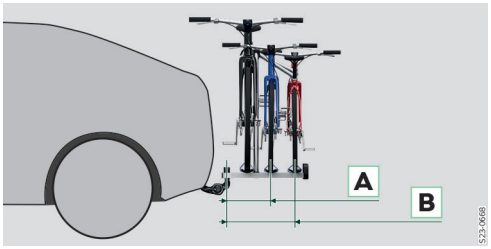
The total permissible weight of the mounted accessories, including the attached load, is max. 75 kg and varies depending on the distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the tow ball.

Distance of the load centre of gravity from the tow ball	Total permissible weight of the accessories including the load
30 cm	75 kg
60 cm	35 kg
70 cm	0 kg

Using the bicycle rack

Škoda Auto recommends that the number of bicycles loaded on the rack should be in accordance with the UN-R 55 directive.

Maximum vertical load of the tow ball specific for the vehicle	Total permissible weight of the accessories including the load	Number of bicycles
50 kg	50 kg	2
55 kg	55 kg	2
from 75 kg	75 kg	3



Loading of the bicycle rack and maximum length to the bicycle racks

A Maximum length 500 mm when two bicycles are loaded and the total permissible weight of accessories including the load is 55 kg

B Maximum length 700 mm when three bicycles are loaded and the total permissible weight of accessories including the load is 75 kg

› We recommend using bicycle racks from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range.

› To reduce air resistance and load, we recommend removing baskets, bags, child seats and batteries from the bicycles.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

› Do not exceed the maximum vertical load of the tow ball.

› Do not exceed the permissible weight of the trailer or other accessories, e.g. bicycle rack.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the towing bracket and the vehicle itself!

› When using accessories, e.g. bicycle racks, the maximum length of the accessory and its total permissible weight, including the load, must be observed.

Maintenance and cleaning

Service events

Service intervals

Compliance with the service intervals and maintenance procedures is crucial for the life and preservation of the vehicle's value. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle and void the warranty. In particular, failure to replace and refill the operating fluids on time can lead to irreversible damage to the engine and its components.

You will be notified of the service due date by the symbol and the corresponding message on the instrument cluster screen.

The service intervals are based on standard operating conditions.

Under adverse operating conditions, we recommend you to carry out some work before the next service date or between the specified service intervals.

In case of uncertainty about previous work before the scheduled service interval, contact a professional service.

The specialist garage will inform you of the service interval, the option to change this and the scope of the service.

All service inspections and replacements or refills of operating fluids are covered by the customer even during the warranty period, unless the Škoda Auto warranty conditions or other binding agreements specify otherwise.

Proof of service

A specialist garage stores the proof of service in the Digital Service Plan information system.

We recommend that you have the document about the performed service inspection printed out by a specialist garage.

Displaying the service due date in the Infotainment system

› Select the following menu from the Infotainment system:

MENU > > > menu item for the service

Resetting information

We recommend that you do not reset the information regarding service events on your own. It can lead to incorrect setting of the service intervals, which can result in vehicle malfunctions.

For vehicles with a variable service interval, new service interval values calculated according to the previous operating conditions will be displayed when the oil change service indicator is reset. These values will then continue to be adjusted according to the current operating conditions.

Service work, adjustments and technical changes

The instructions and guidelines from Škoda Auto must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to the vehicle.

Following these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and maintains the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We recommend that you only use Škoda Genuine Accessories and Škoda Genuine Parts. These guarantee reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle.

Škoda Service Partner

All Škoda authorised workshops adhere to the instructions and guidelines from Škoda Auto. to ensure repairs are carried out on time and to the appropriate standards. Following these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and maintains the vehicle in good technical condition.

We therefore recommend that all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to the vehicle be carried out by a Škoda Service Partner.

Škoda genuine parts

We recommend using Škoda Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by Škoda Auto. These parts are fully compliant with Škoda Auto regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

Škoda Auto is responsible for the safety, compatibility and long-term service life of these products.

Škoda authorised workshops are liable for any defects on Škoda Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale, unless otherwise specified in the purchase contract or other agreements.

Škoda genuine accessories

We recommend that you use Škoda Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. With these accessories, Škoda Auto is responsible for their safety, reliability and suitability for your vehicle type.

Škoda authorised workshops are liable for any defects on Škoda Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years from the date of installation or acceptance, unless otherwise specified in the purchase contract or other agreements.

Spoilers

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Only use the original spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the original spoiler on the boot lid.
- The original spoiler on the front bumper cannot be used without the spoiler on the boot lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- We recommend that you consult a Škoda Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

⚠ NOTICE

Do not attach any racks, e.g. for bicycles or luggage, to the rear spoiler.

Component protection

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-fitted with component protection. This component protection ensures the functional limitation of these components in the event of an unauthorised installation in another vehicle (e.g. following a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

Škoda Prepaid service

Applies to the Czech Republic

For information on the Škoda prepaid service, contact your Škoda Partner or visit the following website:

https://go.skoda.eu/predplaceny-servis

Interior

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

- Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
- Do not use steam, aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents. Solvents can permanently damage airbag modules

Natural leather / Leatherette / Suedia / Fabric

⚠ NOTICE

- Remove any dirt as soon as possible.
- Do not use any leather polish, polishing waxes, shoe polish, stain remover or similar agents for the Suedia seat covers.
- Make sure that natural leather is not moistened when cleaning and that no water seeps into the seams.
- Do not clean the roof cladding with a brush.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of fading of the cover fabric

- If possible, do not leave the covers in direct sunlight for long periods.

- Over time, Suedia and leather materials may show minor observable changes such as wrinkling or discolouration with use. This does not constitute a material defect.
- Some clothing fabrics, e.g. dark denim, may not have sufficient colour fastness. As a result, seat upholstery may become visibly discoloured. This is not a defect in the fabric.
- Sharp-edged zips, rivets, clamps and similar accessories can damage the vehicle's upholstery. The complaints process does not cover such damage.

Plastic parts

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the dash panel!

- Do not attach fragrances or air fresheners to the dash panel.

Windows

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the filaments or the glass antenna

- Do not apply stickers to the heating filaments.
- Do not use sharp objects (such as pot scrapers, etc.) to clean the windows.

Covers on electrically heated seats

⚠ NOTICE

Danger of damaging the heating system!

- Do not clean the seats with water or other liquids.
- Do not dry the seats by switching on the heating.

Seat belts

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the seat belts

› Do not dry clean the seat belts.
› Allow cleaned belts to dry before rolling up.

Instructions for cleaning

Natural leather / Leatherette / Suedia / Fabric

› Remove dust and dirt from the surface with a vacuum cleaner.
› Remove fresh stains with a cotton or woollen cloth slightly moistened with water, or with a weak soapy solution[1)] and wipe with a dry cloth.
› Remove stubborn stains with a suitable cleaning agent.
› For regular care of natural leather, use the equipment provided for this purpose. After each clean, use a care cream with light protection and impregnation effect.
› When cleaning Suedia and fabric surfaces, remove stubborn hair with a special cleaning glove. Remove any pilling with a brush.

Plastic parts

› Remove dirt with water and a slightly moistened cloth or sponge with a suitable cleaning agent if necessary.

Windows

› Remove dirt with clean water and dry with a cloth provided for this purpose.

Infotainment screen

› Before cleaning, switch off the Infotainment system
› Remove any dirt from the screen using the cleaning agents designed for this purpose.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of screen damage
› When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.

Digital instrument cluster screen, Head-up screen

› Switch off the ignition before cleaning.
› Remove dirt with a lightly dampened soft cotton or wool cloth.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of screen damage
› Do not use liquid cleaners to remove dirt.

Covers on electrically heated seats

› Remove stains with a suitable cleaning agent.

Seat belts

› Remove dirt with a soft cloth and a mild soap solution[1)].

Exterior

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
After washing the vehicle, the functionality of the brake system may be affected by moisture and, in winter, by ice.
› Clean and dry the brakes by repeatedly applying them at higher speeds.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Bird droppings, insect residues, litter and sea salt residues, overflowed fuel etc. must be removed as soon as possible.
› Do not use rough sponges, scourers or similar to remove dirt.
› Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
› Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.
› Do not polish the vehicle in a dusty environment.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Paint damage should be repaired as soon as possible.
› Do not treat matte painted parts with polish or hard wax.
› Do not polish foils.
› We recommend treating door seals and window guides with the appropriate tools from Škoda original accessories. These ensure that the protective paint layer on the seals and window guides is not damaged.
› Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to clean the rear view camera.

Before driving through a car wash

› Follow the standard guidelines, e.g. close all windows, fold the mirrors, unscrew the rod of the roof antenna, etc.
› Move the windscreen wiper lever to the **OFF** position.
› If there are special attachments on your vehicle, follow the car wash guidelines.

After washing with wax protection

› Wipe off the windscreen wiper blades with a dry cloth.

---

1) A mild soap solution containing 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

Washing with a pressure washer

NOTICE

- Follow the operating instructions for the pressure washer, in particular the instructions relating to the pressure and the spraying distance from the vehicle surface.
- Do not direct the water jet at the following vehicle parts:
  - Films
  - Lock cylinders
  - Gaps on the vehicle
  - Towing bracket socket
  - Tilting towing arm
  - Camera lenses and sensors
  - Plastic, chrome and anodised parts

Removing snow and ice

NOTICE

- Remove snow and ice with a plastic scraper or a suitable de-icing agent.
- Clean the cameras with a hand brush.
- Only move the scraper in one direction.
- Do not use scratchers or other sharp objects for foils.
- Do not remove snow and ice with hot or warm water.
- Do not remove snow and ice from surfaces with coarse dirt.

Instructions for cleaning

Hand washing

- Wash the vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge or wash mitt and plenty of water, if necessary with additional suitable cleaning agents.
- Use a mild soap solution on the foils and headlights[1].
- Use a glass cleaner for the windscreen wiper blades.
- Wash the cameras with clean water and dry with a suitable clean wipe.

NOTICE

- Wash out the sponge or wash mitt regularly.
- Use a different sponge for wheels, sills and the lower part of the vehicle than that used for the other vehicle parts.
- Do not use any solvent-based cleaners, hard sponges or other sharp-edged objects on the wiper blades as they will damage the graphite layer of the blades during cleaning.
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- Do not dry clean the headlights or use sharp objects.
- Do not put pressure on the bodywork when washing.
- The temperature of the washing water should be max. 60°C.

After hand washing

- Rinse the vehicle and wipe it with a suitable clean cloth.

Vehicle paint

- Protect the paint at least twice a year with hard wax.
- Use a polish for paint that has turned matte.

Films

Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal and not a defect.

The following factors have a negative effect on the life or colour fastness of the films:

- sunlight
- moisture
- air pollution
- stones, e.g. due to rebounding of the cargo during transport on the roof rack

Protection of hollow spaces

Corrosion-prone cavities of the vehicle are permanently protected by preservative wax at the factory.

- Remove any spilled wax with a plastic scraper and remove stains with mineral spirits.

Underseal

The underside is permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical effects.

- Have the protective coating checked by a specialist garage before starting and at the end of the cold season.

Wheels

- After washing, preserve the wheels using a suitable product.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- Excessive dirt on the wheels can unbalance them.

Car jack

- If necessary, apply a suitable grease to the moving parts.

Towing device

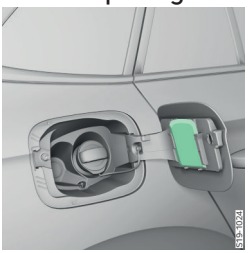
- If necessary, lubricate the ball of the towing bracket with suitable grease.

---

[1] A mild soap solution containing 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

Ice scraper

On the opening of the fuel filler flap



Technical data and specifications

Technical data regulations

The emission standard, information on fuel consumption and other information pertaining to your vehicle can be found in the vehicle's technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity, the COC document.

This information meets the requirements and conditions stipulated by legal or technical regulations.

This and other information about your vehicle and the Declaration of Conformity can be obtained from a Škoda Partner.

The information in the vehicle technical documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual. These specifications and values apply to your vehicle in its condition and configuration at the time of delivery from the manufacturer. Retrofitting an accessory can negatively impact this information and values, in particular the values regarding fuel consumption and carbon dioxide (CO_2) specified in the vehicle documentation and in the Declaration of Conformity.

The performance values indicated have been determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

The vehicle is equipped with devices that conform to the requirements of the current EU regulations and bear the CE (Conformité Européenne) mark. In the UK market (England, Wales and Scotland), this marking corresponds to the UKCA (UK conformity assessed) mark, unless otherwise specified by law.

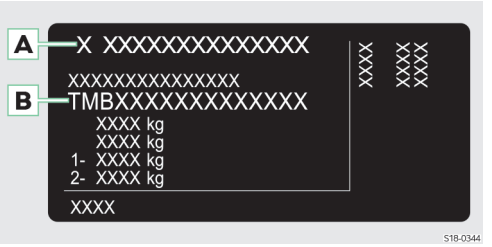


Vehicle identification data

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is found in the following locations:

› on the right of the engine compartment
› on a plate under the windscreen in the lower left corner
› on the type plate at the bottom of the vehicle's central body pillar



Type plate

A Vehicle manufacturer
B Vehicle identification number (VIN)

VIN screen

VIN can be displayed in the Infotainment system under **MENU** > > > service

Engine number

The engine number is embossed on the engine block.

Stickers and labels

Overview

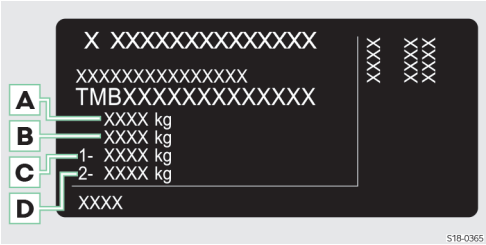
From the factory, stickers and labels with important information for the operation of the car are placed on the engine compartment and on some parts of the vehicle.

› Never remove stickers and labels. They should remain legible.

Axle weights and loads

Maximum permissible weights are listed on the nameplate.

The type plate is located at the bottom of the vehicle's central body pillar.



A Permissible total weight

B Permissible total weight of the loaded combination of vehicles, if the vehicle is used for towing

C Maximum permissible front axle load

D Maximum permissible rear axle load

Permissible total weight of the combination of vehicles

The indicated value is valid for altitudes up to 1,000 m above see level.

As the altitude increases, the engine power decreases and the car's climbing ability decreases.

Therefore, the permissible total weight of the combined vehicle must be reduced by 10 % for every additional 1000 m altitude.

The permissible total weight of the combination of vehicles is the sum of the weight of the loaded vehicle and the weight of the loaded trailer.

Payloads

Use the difference between the permissible total weight of the loaded vehicle and the operating weight to find the approximate maximum payload weight.

The payload includes the following components:

- The weight of the passengers
- The weight of all luggage and other cargo
- The weight of the load on the roof, including the weight of the roof racks
- The weight of the equipment excluded from the operating weight
- Vertical ball head load when using a towing device » *page 191*

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident and vehicle damage!

- Do not exceed the specified values for the permissible weights.

Operating weight

Information about the operating weight

The specification corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment. This includes the driver's weight of 75 kg, the weight of the operating fluids and the on-board tool kit and the fuel tank filled to a minimum of 90 %.

Operating weight

Engine type	Gearbox	Operating weight (kg)
1.0 l/70 kW TSI	manual	1159
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	manual	1178
	automatic	1195
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	automatic	1238
1.0 l/59 kW MPI	manual	1133
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	manual	1135
	automatic	1171

ⓘ Ask about the exact vehicle weight in a specialist garage.

Vehicle dimensions

Vehicle dimensions

Specification	Value (in mm)
Vehicle height	1459
Vehicle width with folded-in mirrors	1849
Vehicle width with folded-out mirrors	1954
Ground clearance	138
Vehicle length	4108

Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)

The vehicle is equipped with an accident data recorder, further referred to as “EDR”. The purpose of EDR is to record data during a traffic accident or other extraordinary traffic events, further referred to as an “accident”.

Data is only recorded in the event of an accident in which the restraint systems are triggered.

The EDR records, for example, the following data in the short period of time in which the accident occurred (approximately 10 s):

- The function of certain systems in the vehicle.
- The seat belt status of the driver and front passenger.
- Actuation of the brake and accelerator pedals.
- The vehicle's speed

The recorded data allows how the vehicle systems behaved shortly before, during and after the accident to be analysed. This helps to clarify the circumstances of the accident.

The data relating to assist systems in the vehicle is also recorded. For example, whether the affected systems were switched on or off at the time, whether they were only partially available or inactive. It is also possible to track whether these vehicle functions controlled, accelerated or decelerated the vehicle during the accident. Depending on the equipment, these functions include:

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Assistant for keeping your lane (Lane Assist)
- Park steering assistant
- Emergency braking function (Front Assist)

Under normal driving conditions, no data is recorded. There is no audio or video recording from the vehicle interior or surroundings. Personal data such as name, gender, age and location of the accident is not stored in the EDR. However, third parties such as law enforcement authorities may use certain resources to connect the EDR content to other data sources to help identify the people involved in the accident when investigating the causes.

The ignition must be on and special equipment used to read the EDR data.

Škoda Auto will not read or otherwise process any accident data from the EDR without the approval of the vehicle owner or other person authorised to use the vehicle. Exceptions are specified in the contractual arrangements, or these are subject to generally binding regulations.

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by Škoda Auto in accordance with the generally binding legal provisions relating to personal data protection.

To view the current personal data protection statement, use the following link or load the QR code:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

Information about the radio systems in the vehicle

Europe and countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines

Your vehicle has various radio systems. The radio system manufacturers declare that these systems comply with the requirements of the 2014/53/EU Directive.

Ukraine

Your vehicle has various radio systems. The manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that the equipment complies with the requirements of the Technical Regulations on Radio Equipment approved by Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine No. 355 of 25 May 2017.

UA – in order to operate radio equipment in Ukraine it is necessary to obtain a permit in the manner prescribed by the legislation of Ukraine.

HELLA GmbH & Co. KGaA declares that the radio equipment type 013854 complies with the Technical Regulations on Radio Equipment. The full text of the Declaration of Conformity is available on the website at the following address: **http://www.hella.com/vw**

Great Britain

Your vehicle is equipped with various radio systems. The UK market acts as an importer of these radio devices in accordance with the Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 as follows:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.

Yeoman Drive, Blakelands

Milton Keynes, MK 14 5AN

United Kingdom

Turkey

Your vehicle has various radio systems. In accordance with the 2014/53/AB regulation it acts as an importer[1)] for Turkey:

Yüce Auto Motorlu Araclar

E5 Karayolu Fil Yokusu no:16

Cevizli Maltepe

Istanbul

Turkey

Moldavia

Your vehicle has various radio systems. In accordance with the 2014/53/EU regulation it acts as an importer for Moldova:

DAAC Auto SRL

Importator oficial Škoda

Str. Calea Orheiului 111/6

MD–2020, mun. Chișinău

Israel

The Department of Communications wireless approval number is 6525101.

The use of the equipment is secondary and not subject to radio operation authorisation, i.e. – it is not resistant to interference and does not interfere with other legally operated systems.

The equipment is only exempted from radio operation permits in “Bezeq mode” and only for the customer's own use.

The provision of the “Bezeq service” to third parties is subject to a specific licence from the Ministry of Communications.

---

1) This information only applies to products imported by our official representative, Yüce Auto Motorlu Araclar.

The antenna of the equipment may not be replaced or other technical changes made.

Taiwan

Radio equipment – Declaration of Conformity

Without a permit granted by the Directorate General of Telecommunications (DGT), no company, firm or user may change the frequency, increase the transmitting power or alter the original characteristics, functions or performance of an approved low-power radio frequency device. Low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect the safety of aircraft or interfere with legal communications. If it does, the user must immediately stop operating the equipment until the interference is removed. Legal communication means radio communication operated in accordance with the Telecommunications Act. Radio frequency equipment with low transmitting power has to be sensitive to interference caused by legal communication or devices transmitting radio waves in the ISM bands.

Displaying information on radio devices

The following information on radio equipment is available on the Škoda website:

- Information about Directive 2014/53/EU on harmonising the laws of the Member States on making radio equipment available on the market
- Information on the Technical Regulation on radio equipment approved by the Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine No. 355 of 25 May 2017
- Declaration of Conformity (Declaration of Conformity) of radio equipment manufacturers

To view the information, use the following link or load the QR code:

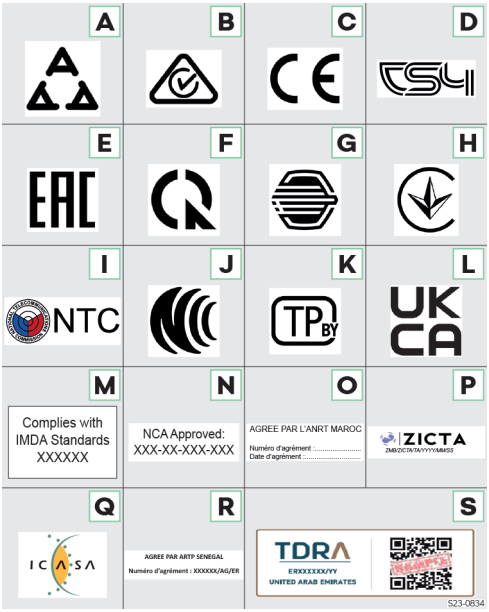
https://www.skoda-auto.com/services/red-doc

After this, proceed as follows:

1. Select the desired region.
2. Chose the required car model.

Examples of radio system labels

Due to the small size of some radio equipment, examples of radio equipment designations are given here.



- **A** Serbia
- **B** Australia and New Zealand
- **C** Europe (countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines)
- **D** Armenia
- **E** Russia (countries of the Russian customs union)
- **F** Vietnam
- **G** Mongolia
- **H** Ukraine
- **I** Philippines
- **J** Taiwan
- **K** Belarus
- **L** Great Britain
- **M** Singapore
- **N** Ghana
- **O** Morocco
- **P** Zambia
- **Q** South Africa
- **R** Senegal
- **S** United Arab Emirates

Transmitted frequency ranges, transmission power

Depending on the car equipment not all the listed devices may be available in the car, and on the market

Equipment	Frequency range	Maximum transmitting power
Central locking remote control key	433.05–434.79 MHz 6.0–8.5 GHz (6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz)	10 mW –
Central electronics unit	434.42 MHz	–
Independent heating remote control	868.2–868.4 MHz 868.7–869.2 MHz	25 mW 24 mW
Independent car heating	868.2–868.4 MHz 868.7–869.2 MHz	25 mW 24 mW
Keyless car locking	125 kHz	76 dBµA/m 89 dBµA/m
The Infotainment system	MW (AM): 531–1602 kHz FM: 87.5–108 MHz DAB: (BAND III): 174.928–239.2 MHz Bluetooth: 2402–2480 MHz Wi–Fi: 2402–2482 MHz Wi–Fi: 5170–5250 MHz Wi–Fi: 5735–5875 MHz	– – – 10 dBm 20 mW 15 dBm 15 dBm 15 dBm
Wireless mobile phone charging	128 kHz	15 W
NFC	13.56 MHz	100 mW
Radar sensors for assistance systems	76–77 GHz 24.050–24.25 GHz	23.38 dBm <20 dBm
Instrument cluster with integrated immobiliser	AM: 125 +/-10 kHz	1.108 W
Antennas and impedance converters	AM: 0.52–1.7 MHz FM: 87–108 MHz DAB: 174–240 MHz GNSS: 1559.052–1605.375 MHz	– – – –
Phone signal booster (LTE-MBC-EU)	GSM900 (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925–960 MHz) GSM1800 (uplink: 1710–1785 MHz / downlink: 1805–1880 MHz) WCDMA FDDI (uplink: 1920–1980 MHz / downlink: 2110–2170 MHz) WCDMA FDDIII (uplink: 1710–1785 MHz / downlink: 1805–1880 MHz) WCDMA FDDVIII (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925–960 MHz) LTE FDD1 (uplink: 1920–1980 MHz / downlink: 2110–2170 MHz) LTE FDD3 (uplink: 1710–1785 MHz / downlink: 1805–1880 MHz) LTE FDD7 (uplink: 2500–2570 MHz / downlink: 2620–2690 MHz) LTE FDD8 (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925–960 MHz) LTE FDD20 (uplink: 832–862 MHz / downlink: 791–821 MHz)	GSM900: 33 dBm/2 W GSM1800: 30 dBm/1 W UMTS: 21 dBm/ 0.125 W LTE: 23 dBm/0.2 W

Equipment	Frequency range	Maximum transmitting power
RSAD boxes	Receiving frequency: 6.0–8.5 GHz (6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz) Transmitting frequency: 6.0–8.5 GHz (6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz)	–6,2 dBm e.i.r.p.
Analog instrument cluster: Global / Basic / Medium	125 kHz	40 dBµA/m (at a distance of 10 m)
Digital instrument cluster: FPK Basic 8"	125 kHz	33.69 dBµA/m (at a distance of 3 m)
Virtual cockpit: FPK Entry	125 kHz	-2.5 dBµA/m (at a distance of 10 m)
Tyre pressure monitoring assistant	433.92 MHz	10 mW

Disposal of used batteries and electronic devices

Applies to Germany

Used batteries

Used batteries must be collected and recycled separately by the end user. This is shown by the symbol of the crossed-out bin. As an end-user, you have a legal obligation to surrender used batteries.

Batteries containing heavy metals are marked with the chemical symbols Hg (mercury), Cd (cadmium) and/or Pb (lead). Heavy metals can be harmful to human and animal health and can accumulate in the environment. To avoid these consequences, make sure that used batteries are collected separately and disposed of properly.

Particular attention should be paid to the handling of batteries containing lithium. For example, they must never be heated to high temperatures or physically damaged. Leaking gases or liquids from damaged batteries can pose a significant risk to health and the environment. A short circuit can also cause a fire or explosion.

› Used batteries can be dropped off at a Škoda Partner in EU member states and other countries.
› High-voltage batteries can be dropped off at a Škoda Partner.
› For more information on take-back and recycling, contact your Škoda Partner.

Old electrical/electronic equipment

Your vehicle contains electrical and electronic devices, such as a remote control key. These devices are marked with a crossed-out bin symbol .

The relevant legislation requires that old equipment with this marking must be collected and disposed of separately from normal household waste. These devices can be dropped off at local collection points or any state-approved drop-off system.

› Batteries, rechargeable batteries, or flash lights that are not hard-wired must first be dismantled and disposed of appropriately.
› You are responsible for deleting any personal information that is stored on old devices.
› For more information on take-back and recycling, contact your Škoda Partner.

Product recycling

The following instructions apply to France.



Pictured are instructions for the recycling of items:

› Car keys
› Remote control of independent heating and ventilation
› Compressor
› Charging cable
› Card with mobile key



Pictured are instructions for the recycling of item:

› Fire extinguisher



The recycling instructions in the image apply to documents, packaging or bags for the following items:

› Owner's manual
› Car first aid kit
› Fire extinguisher
› Compressor
› Charging cables
› Charging socket and sealing cap
› Tool kit
› Tyre repair kit
› Warning triangle
› Reflective vest
› Tool bag

ⓘ Triman logo and the Infotri symbol contain important sorting information for the end consumer.

Trademarks Information

Some terms in this Manual have an ® or a ™ symbol. They identify a mark or a registered trademark. However the absence of a label does not mean that the terms can be freely used.

Other product designations are trademarks or service marks of the respective rights owner.

› **“Android Auto™”** is a registered trademark of theGoogle Inc company.
› **“Apple CarPlay™”, “Siri®”** are registered trademarks of the Apple Inc company.
› **“Bluetooth®”** is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc company.
› **“HDMI, logo HDMI”** are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.
› **“MirrorLink®, logo MirrorLink®”** are registered trademarks of Car Connectivity Consortium LLC.
› **“Windows®”** is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation, Redmond, USA.

Preparation for breathalyser

The vehicle is equipped with a preparatory kit for the installation of an analogue alcohol tester compliant with the EU 2019/2144 standard.

Have the breathalyser installed by a specialist garage.

Rights arising from defective performance, Škoda warranties

Rights arising from defective performance

Your Škoda Partner, as a seller, is liable for material defects in your new Škoda vehicle, Škoda Genuine Parts and Škoda Genuine Accessories, in accordance with the legal requirements and the purchase contract.

The buyer is entitled to assert the rights arising from defective performance with the responsible Škoda Partner from the time of the vehicle handover, the date of which is duly documented together with the vehicle identification number (VIN) in the “Vehicle handover documentation” section in this Owner's Manual.

Škoda Warranty for new vehicles

In addition to the legal rights arising from defective performance, Škoda Partners provide you with the Škoda new vehicle warranty (hereinafter referred to as the “Škoda Warranty”) under the following terms and conditions.

Under the Škoda Warranty, Škoda Partners provide the following benefits[1]:

- Free repair of damage due to a defect that occurs on your vehicle within 2 years of the start of the Škoda Warranty.
- Free repair of damage due to paintwork defects that occurs on your vehicle within 3 years of the start of the Škoda Warranty.
- Free repair of rust corrosion on the body that occurs on your vehicle within 12 years of the start of the warranty.

  In terms of rust corrosion on the body, the Škoda Warranty shall cover only rust corrosion through body panels from the inside to the outside.

The start of the Škoda Warranty is the day on which the new vehicle is handed over for use by a Škoda Partner to the first buyer who is not a Škoda Partner[2].

Škoda Partner enters this date into the manufacturer's relevant systems, and any Škoda Partner can notify you of this date on request.

Fault rectification under the Škoda Warranty shall be carried out by replacing or repairing the defective parts. The Škoda authorised workshop will determine the type of vehicle repair. The rectification of the defect will be carried out within the time limit of the Škoda authorised workshop's capabilities. Any replaced parts become the property of the Škoda authorised workshop.

There shall be no further claims arising from the Škoda Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement vehicle for the duration of repair and compensation.

The Škoda Warranty can be claimed at any Škoda authorised workshop. The defect must be notified within the warranty period and without undue delay after its discovery.

There are no claims under the Škoda Warranty, if vehicle damage has occurred in causal connection with one of the following circumstances:

- The service work was not carried out on time and professionally in accordance with the provisions of Škoda Auto, or its execution was not proven by the customer when the claim was made under the Škoda Warranty.
- Damage was not reported immediately to an expert servicing workshop or was not properly rectified without undue delay.
- Damage refers to parts that are subject to natural wear and tear, such as tyres, wiper blades, brake pads and brake discs, clutch, bulbs, synchroniser rings, 12V vehicle battery, etc.
- External impact or influences (e.g. accident, hail, flood, fire etc.).
- Installation, connection of parts or accessories, making other modifications or technical changes of the vehicle not approved by Škoda Auto (e.g. tuning).
- Unauthorised use, incorrect handling (e.g. use in motor sport competitions, overloading or commercial passenger transport), incorrect care or unauthorised maintenance.
- Failure to follow the instructions in your vehicle's Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions, including but not limited to ignoring the control lights and warning messages of the car or failure to update the vehicle's software properly and on time.

The customer shall prove the lack of causation.

This Škoda Warranty shall not affect the purchaser's statutory rights arising from unsatisfactory performance in respect of the seller of the vehicle and possible claims arising from product liability laws.

If the vehicle is sold within the warranty period, the rights under the Škoda Warranty are transferred to the buyer, who is entitled to exercise them to the extent and under the conditions existing at the time of the sale of the vehicle.

Škoda Mobility Guarantee

The Mobility Guarantee provides you with peace of mind for journeys in your vehicle.

If your vehicle is left immobilised on the road due to an unexpected fault, we offer services to keep you moving as part of the mobility guarantee, including: technical assistance on the phone, breakdown assistance at the breakdown location, start-up on site, and towing to the Škoda authorised workshop, if necessary.

---

1) In some countries, Škoda Partners may provide you with a warranty in addition to the Škoda Warranty terms and conditions listed here. For the specific terms and scope of such warranty, as well as the length of the warranty periods, refer to the purchase contract with your Škoda Partner or the accompanying documentation. Any rights under a warranty provided in excess of the terms of the Škoda Warranty can only be exercised with Škoda Partners who have agreed to provide such a warranty.

2) As required by generally binding legislation in some countries, the date of registration of the vehicle may be given instead of the date of handover.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, the Škoda authorised workshop may, if necessary, arrange additional subsequent services, such as replacement transport (bus, train, etc.), the provision of a replacement vehicle, and the like.

Specific claims for free provision of services under the Škoda Mobility Guarantee are only valid if your vehicle suffers a defect which is to be remedied on the basis of fulfilment under the Škoda Warranty.

Check the conditions for provision of the mobility guarantee for your vehicle with your Škoda Partner. They will also inform you of the detailed terms and conditions of the Mobility Warranty in relation to your vehicle. In the event that your vehicle is not covered by a mobility warranty, your ŠKODA Partner will inform you of your options.

Optional Škoda Extended Warranty

If you also purchased a Škoda Extended Warranty with your new vehicle, Škoda Partners offer free repair of vehicle damage caused by a defect in the vehicle during the warranty period.

the Škoda Extended Warranty for your vehicle is valid for the agreed period or until the agreed mileage limit is reached, whichever comes first.

For the assessment of claims relating to the Škoda Extended Warranty, the conditions of the Škoda Warranty described above apply to the appropriate extent.

Defects may only be remedied under the Škoda Extended Warranty by replacing or repairing the defective parts, whereby the Škoda authorised workshop decides on the type of vehicle repair. The rectification of the defect will be carried out within the time limit of the Škoda authorised workshop's capabilities.

There shall be no further claims arising from the Škoda Extended Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement vehicle for the duration of repair and compensation.

The above-mentioned paint warranty and the warranty against corrosion are unaffected by the Škoda Extended Warranty.

The Škoda Extended Warranty does not apply to exterior and interior foils.

For information on the detailed terms and conditions of the Škoda Extended Warranty, contact your Škoda Partner.

ⓘ The Škoda Mobility Guarantee and the Škoda Extended Warranty are only available for certain countries.

Engine specifications

1.0 l/70 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	70/5000–5500
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	175/1600–3500
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999
Gearbox	manual
Maximum speed (km/h)	190
With specified gear engaged	5
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	10.7

1.0 l/85 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	85/5500–5500	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	200/2000–3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999	
Gearbox	manual	automatic
Maximum speed (km/h)	202	202
With specified gear engaged	5	6
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	9.3	9.7

1.5 l/110 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	110/5000–6000
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	250/1500–3500
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1498
Gearbox	automatic
Maximum speed (km/h)	222
With specified gear engaged	6
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	8.0

1.0 l/59 kW MPI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	59/6300
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	93/3700–3900
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999
Gearbox	manual
Maximum speed (km/h)	175
With specified gear engaged	5
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	15.7

1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	81/5800	
Highest torque (Nm/rpm)	152/3850–4100	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1598	
Gearbox	manual	automatic
Maximum speed (km/h)	193	190
With specified gear engaged	5	5
Acceleration 0 – 100 km/h	10.1	11.6

Index

Numbers and symbols

12V battery
Fault 164
12V vehicle battery 163
Charging 163
Checking the condition 163
Disconnecting and connecting 164
Indicator lights 164
Protection against discharge 163
Safety 21
see 12V vehicle battery 163
7" Infotainment system 71
8" Infotainment system 86
9" Infotainment system 101

A

ABS 140
ACC 145
interrupting the cruise control 146
setting the distance 146
START-STOP system 145
Accident
Data recorder 200
Accident data recorder 200
Acid 163
Adaptive Cruise Control 145
Adaptive headlights 54
Air conditioning
see Manual air conditioning 60
Air conditioning system
see Climatronic 61
Airbag 48
Activation 48
Deactivating airbags 49
Fault 49
Location 48
Safety 48
Turning off the passenger front airbag 49
Airbag switch 49
Signalling 49
Alarm 32
trailer 32
All-season tyres 169
Android Auto
7" Infotainment system 83
8" Infotainment system 98
9" Infotainment system 117
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Apple CarPlay
7" Infotainment system 83
8" Infotainment system 98
9" Infotainment system 117
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Armrest
Rear 39
Ashtray 185
Assist systems
Driving systems 140
Safety 23
Assistance systems
Parking systems 152
Assistant for keeping your lane
see Lane Assist 147
Automatic braking
see Front Assist 141
Automatic emergency braking 152
Automatic gearbox 134
Manual changing gears with the shift paddles on the steering wheel 135
Manually changing gear with the selector lever 135
Automatic gearbox modes 134
Availability of Škoda Connect services 124

B

Background lighting 57
Bonnet 157
Boot
Fasteners 177
Rigid boot cover 178
Securing nets 178
Boot lid
Automatic locking 37
Manual operation 36
Manual release 37
Brake fluid 139
Safety 20
Brakes 138
Handbrake 139
Breakdown call 131

C

Car seat
see Child seat 43
Cargo elements 177
Central locking 28

SAFE function 29
Central locking button 29
Centre console 14
Checking the vehicle before the journey 21
Child lock 34
Child seat 43
Fastened with a safety belt 44
Grouping 44
i-Size 46
ISOFIX 44, 47
Recommended child seats 44
Securing children properly 22
TOP TETHER 47
Types of fasteners 47
Child seats
In the front passenger seat 43
Cleaning the vehicle
Exterior 195
Instructions for cleaning the exterior 196
Instructions for cleaning the Interior 195
Interior 194
Climatronic 61
Coasting
see Driving in neutral 135
Coming Home 54
Coming Home, Leaving Home
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Compartments 180, 182
Control centre
7" Infotainment system 71, 74
8" Infotainment system 89
9" Infotainment system 105
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Convenience turn signal 53
Coolant 159
Checking 159
Checking and topping up 159
Safety 20
Specification 159
Temperature gauge 159
Troubleshooting 159
Cooling system 60, 62
Cruise control
Indicator light 143
Cruise control system 143
Cup holder 185
Cyber security
8" Infotainment system 93
9" Infotainment system 111

D

Data connection 129
Daytime running lights 52
Digital assistant Laura
9" Infotainment system 104
Digital instrument cluster
see Digital screen 65
see Virtual cockpit 66
Digital screen 65
Doors
Opening/closing 34
Driver Alert
see Fatigue detection 151
Driver's seat 14
Driving data 68
Resetting 69
Driving in neutral 135
Driving modes 136
Eco 136
Individual 136
Normal 136
Sport 136
Driving with a trailer 137
Safety 23
Trailer stability assist 140
DSR 140

E

Earth point 165
Economical driving
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Economical driving style 136
EDS 140
Electric window control 35
Force limiter 35
Electric window operation
Activation 36
Operation 35
Troubleshooting 36
Emergency
Emergency call 24
Using the jump start cables 164
What to do after an accident 26
What to do in the event of a fire 26
Emergency calls 24
Emergency equipment 176
Jack 176
Tool kit 176
Emergency wheel
Safe driving 23
Engine compartment 15
Bonnet 157
Coolant 159
Engine oil 158
Safety 20
Engine number 198
Engine oil 158
Changing 158
Indicator light 158
Refilling 158
Safety 20
Specification 157
Engine specifications
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
EPC 160
ESC 140

Exhaust gas control system 160
Explanations 5
Exterior mirrors 40

F

Fasteners in the boot 177
Fatigue detection 151
Fault in the engine control system 160
Fire extinguisher 176
First aid kit 176
Fog lights
Front 53
Rear 53
Fogging 61, 63
Front Assist 141
Front fog lights 53
Front seats
Manually controlled 38
Front vehicle area 11
Fuel
Petrol 160
Fuel filler flap 160
Fuel tank
Opening the fuel filler flap 160
Fuel tank capacity
Petrol 162
Fuses 165
in the dash panel 166
In the engine compartment 167
Replacement 166

G

Gear shifting
Manual gearbox 134

H

Handbrake 139
Hazard warning lights 53
Headlight range 51
Headlights
Dynamic cornering light 54
Range control 51
Headrests 39
Heating 60
HHC
see Hill Hold Control 140
High beam 52
High beam assistant 54
Hill Hold Control 140
Hooks
In the boot 177
In the interior 182

I

i-Size 46
Ice scraper 13
Ignition switch 132
Images
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Immobiliser 133
Indicator lights
Introduction 16
Overview 16
Information calls 130
Infotainment control centre
7" Infotainment system 71
Infotainment display
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Infotainment keypad
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Infotainment Online 131
Infotainment system
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Instrument cluster
digital screen 65
Virtual cockpit 66
Interior background lighting 57
Interior equipment
12V socket 180, 187
Ashtray 185
Coat hooks 182
Cup holder 185
Glasses holder 180
Lighter 185
Make-up mirror 180
Parking permit holder 180
Storage compartment behind the central console 183
Storage compartment for umbrella 184
Storage compartments 180, 182
Storage pockets 182
Tablet holder 186
Interior lighting 56
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Interior mirror 40
ISOFIX 47
Placement in the seat 44
Retaining rings 47

J

Jump start cables 165

K

KESSY
see Keyless locking 31
Key 27
Replacing the battery 28
Keyless locking (KESSY) 31
Keypad
7" Infotainment 73
8" Infotainment system 88
9" Infotainment 103
Kick-down 135

L

Lane Assist 147
Lane change assistant
see Side Assist 149
Leaving Home 54
Lever
High beam 52
Light assist 55
Turn signal 53
Wipers and washers 57
Liability for faults
see Warranty 206
Lifting the vehicle 171
Light Assist
see the High Beam Assistant 54
Light bulbs 55
Front fog light – replacement 55
Rear lamp – replacement 56
Light switch 51
Lighter 185
Lighting
Background 57
Exterior 51
Interior 56
Lights 51
Automatic switching on/off 52
Control 51
Corner function 54
Driving in the opposite direction of traffic 51
Dynamic cornering light 54
Fog lights 53
Hazard warning lights 53
Headlamps washers 58
Headlight flasher 52
Headlight range control 51
High beam 52
Indicator light 53
Parking lights 54
Replacing light bulbs 55
Troubleshooting 52
Turn signal 53
Limiter
see Speed limiter 142
Load distribution 137
Locking 28, 31
Low beam 52
Luggage compartment 176
Double-sided carpet 178
Storage boxes 176
Storage pocket 178
Transporting objects safely 23
Variable loading floor 179
Luggage compartment carpet 178
Luggage compartment equipment 176

M

Manual air conditioning 60
Manual gearbox 134
MCB 140
Media
7” Infotainment 77
8” Infotainment 91
9” Infotainment 109
Playlist 110
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
MirrorLink
7” Infotainment system 83
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Mirrors
see Exterior mirrors 40
see Interior mirror 40
Mobile devices management
7" Infotainment system 79
8" Infotainment system 93
9" Infotainment system 112
MSR 140
Multi-Collision Brake
see MCB 140

N

Navigation
9” Infotainment system 119
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Nets 178
New vehicle or new parts 19
Notes on starting 132

O

Oil
see Engine oil 158
Online services
Availability 124
Breakdown call 131
Data connection 129
Information calls 130
MyŠkoda application 125
Personalisation 128
Planning a service visit 131
Shop 130
Škoda Connect 124
Škoda Connect services 131
Škoda Connect services user registration and activation 125
System update 129
User account 128
User management 126
Vehicle's health card 131
Online services activation 125

P

Park assist
Troubleshooting 155
Park Pilot
see Parking aid 152

Park steering assistant 154
Parking
Parking aid 152
Rear Traffic Alert. 154
Rear view camera 153
Safe stopping of the vehicle 24
Parking aid 152
Parking assistance systems 152
Parking brake 139
Parking lights 52, 54
Passenger front airbag switch
Switch fault 50
Passenger seat 14
Pedestrian detection 142
Personal data 125, 200
Personalisation 128
Personalization
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Petrol 160
Conditions for refuelling 161
Fuel tank capacity 162
Refilling 161
Refuelling with other fuel 161
Specified petrol 160
Standards 160
Phone
7" Infotainment 80
8" Infotainment 95
9" Infotainment 113
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Phone box 184
Planning a service visit 131
Power assisted steering 40
Predictive adaptive Cruise Control 145

R

Radio
7" Infotainment 74
8" Infotainment 89
9" Infotainment 106
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Radio systems in the vehicle 201
Rear armrest
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Rear fog light 53
Rear seats
Folding down 38
Rear Traffic Alert 154
Rear vehicle area 13
Rear view camera 153
Operation 153
Recirculated air mode 60, 62
Recycling 205
Refilling
Coolant 159
Engine oil 158
Petrol 161
Windscreen washer fluid 58
Reflective vest 176
Remote access to the vehicle 131
Rights arising from defective performance
see Warranty 206
Rigid boot cover 178
Roof rack 188
Fixing roof racks 188
Roof loading 188
Safe driving 23

S

SAFE – function 29
Safe driving 23
Safety
Before driving 19
Child seat 22
Climatic conditions 24
Driving through water 23
Emergency call 24
Exiting the vehicle 24
Indicator lights 23
New vehicle or new parts 19
Seat belt webbing 22
Sensors and cameras 20
Sitting correctly 21
Transporting loads and objects 23
Vehicle adjustments 19
What to do after an accident 26
What to do in the event of a fire 26
Scheduling a service visit
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Seat belts 42
adjusting the height 43
Automatic belt retractor 42
Belt tensioners 42
Blocked belt retractor 43
Correct webbing 22
Fastening and unfastening 42
Safety 42
Status display 42
Seat heating 63
Seats 38
Folding down 38
Heating 63
ISOFIX 47
Sitting safely 21
TOP TETHER 47
Selector lever 135
Service events 193
Displaying the due date 193
Intervals 193
Resetting information 193
Service work 193
Setting personal data protection 125
Setting the air conditioning fan speed 62
Setting the tyre pressure 174
Shop 130
Side Assist 149

Side vehicle area 11
Sidelights
see Parking lights 54
Škoda Connect services
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Škoda Prepaid service 194
SmartLink
7” Infotainment system 83
8” Infotainment system 98
9” Infotainment system 117
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Snow chains 169
Sockets
12V socket 187
Safety 21
Spare wheel 170
Safe driving 23
Speed limit 69
Resetting 69
Setting 69
Speed limit warning 69
setting 69
Speed limiter 142
Indicator light 142
START-STOP 133
Starter button 132
Starting 132
Starting the engine 132
Starting the vehicle
Using the jump start cables 164
Steering column lock 40
Steering wheel 39
Buttons 39, 65, 67
Correct position 22
Heating 64
Manual changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel 135
Steering wheel heating 64
Stopping the engine 132, 133
Storage compartment behind the centre console 183
Storage pocket 178
Sunshades 36
Supported media files
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Supported media sources
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Switching low beam on automatically 52
Switching off passenger front airbag 49
Switching off the passenger front airbag
Signalling 49
System
7” Infotainment 71
8” Infotainment 86
9” Infotainment 101
System and Infotainment updates
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
System update 129

T

Tablet holder 186
TCS 140
Technical data and specifications 198
Vehicle dimensions 200
Temporary wheel 170
The Infotainment system overview
7" Infotainment system 71
8" Infotainment system 86
9" Infotainment system 101
The Infotainment system restart
7" Infotainment system 72
8" Infotainment system 87
9" Infotainment system 102
The Infotainment system screen
7" Infotainment system 72
8" Infotainment system 87
9" Infotainment system 102
The Infotainment system settings
7" Infotainment system 72
8" Infotainment system 86
9" Infotainment system 101
The Infotainment system update
7" Infotainment system 72
8" Infotainment system 87
9" Infotainment system 102
Tips for economical driving 136
Tiptronic 135
Tool kit 176
TOP TETHER 47
Mounting retaining rings 47
Touchscreen operation
7" Infotainment system 73
8" Infotainment system 87
9" Infotainment system 102
Tow rope 138
Towing bracket
Conditions for fitting the tow bar 189
Installing the tow bar 189, 190
Overview 188
Setting the ready position 189
The ready position 189
Tow bar loading 191
Troubleshooting 191
What you should be mindful of 188
Towing device 188
Towing eye 138
Towing the vehicle 138
Traffic accident
Emergency call 24
What to do after an accident 26
Traffic sign recognition 150
Trailer 137
alarm 32
Coupling and uncoupling 190
Permissible weight 137
Safe driving 23

Trailer stability assist 140
Transport
Towing bracket 188
Transporting objects safely 23
Transporting children 22
Transporting items
Roof rack 188
Travel Assist 148
Travel assistance
see Travel Assist 148
Trays 180, 182
TSA
see Trailer stability assist 140
Turn signal 53
Type plate 198
Tyre pressure monitor 174
Tyres 168, 169
Overview of labelling 168
Pressure 173
Puncture repair kit 172
Tread wear indicator 168
tyre pressure gauge 176
Tyre pressure monitor 174

U

Umbrella 184
Undisclosed vehicle data 125
Unlocking 28, 31
USB 180, 182
User account 128
User management 126
User registration 125

V

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment 179
Vehicle adjustments
Recommendations 193
Safety 19
Vehicle dimensions 200
Vehicle heath card 131
Vehicle height 200
Vehicle identification number
see Vehicle identification number 198
Vehicle identification number (vehicle identification numbers) 198
Vehicle length 200
Vehicle status 70
Vehicle width 200
Vehicle's health card
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Vest
see Reflective vest 176
Virtual cockpit 66
Voice control
9" Infotainment system 104
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6

W

Warning triangle 176
Warranty 206
Mobility Warranty 206
New vehicle warranty 206
Optional Extended Warranty 206
Rights arising from defective performance 206
Washer fluid
Low level 58
Washers
see Wipers and washers 57
Washing in a car wash 195
Washing with a pressure washer 195
Waste container 185
Weight 198
Wheels 168
Bolt cover caps 174
Flat tyre 169
Full-width wheel trim 174
Full-width wheel trim Aero 174
Overview of tyre labelling 168
Pressure change 169
Replacing 170, 171
snow chains 169
spare and temporary wheel 170
Tread wear indicator 168
Tyre pressure 173
Tyre pressure monitor 174
Wi-Fi
8" Infotainment system 97
9" Infotainment system 116
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6
Windows 35
Heating 63
Mechanical operation 34
Windows heating 63
Windscreen washer fluid
How to refill the fluid 58
Windscreen wipers and washers
Refilling the windscreen washer fluid 58
Winter tyres 169
Wiper service position 59
Wipers and washers 57
Automatic rear wiper 58
Automatic wiping 58
Folding the wiper arms away 59
Low washer fluid 58
Replacing the wiper blade 59
Wireless phone charging 184
WLAN
7" Infotainment system 82
see the digital version of the Owner's Manual 6

X

XDS+ 140